POVERTY TRENDS IN SOUTH AFRICA

An examination of absolute poverty between 2006 and 2023

IMPROVING LIVES THROUGH DATA ECOSYSTEMS

stats sa
Department:
Statistics South Africa
REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

Koch Street, Salvokop, Pretoria, 0002
Private Bag X44, Pretoria, 0001, South Africa
User information service: +27(12) 310 8600, Fax: +27(12) 310 8944
Main switchboard: +27(12) 310 8911, Fax: +27(12) 310 8944
Website: www.statssa.gov.za, Email: info@statssa.gov.za

Poverty Trends in South Africa

An examination of absolute poverty between 2006 and 2023

Statistics South Africa, 2025

Risenga Maluleke, Statistician-General

Report No. 03-10-06

Poverty trends in South Africa: An examination of absolute poverty between 2006 and 2023 / Statistics South Africa

Published by Statistics South Africa, Private Bag X44, Pretoria 0001

© Statistics South Africa, 2025
Users may apply or process this data, provided Statistics South Africa (Stats SA) is acknowledged as the original source of the data; that it is specified that the application and/or analysis is the result of the user's independent processing of the data; and that neither the basic data nor any reprocessed version or application thereof may be sold or offered for sale in any form whatsoever without prior permission from Stats SA.

Stats SA Library Cataloguing-in-Publication (CIP) Data
Poverty trends in South Africa: An examination of absolute poverty between 2006 and 2023 / Statistics South Africa. Pretoria: Statistics South Africa, 2025

Report No. 03-10-06
194 pp

ISBN: 978-1-83491-416-9

A complete set of Stats SA publications is available at Stats SA Library and the following libraries:

National Library of South Africa, Pretoria Division
National Library of South Africa, Cape Town Division
Library of Parliament, Cape Town
Bloemfontein Public Library
Natal Society Library, Pietermaritzburg
Johannesburg Public Library
Eastern Cape Library Services, King William's Town
Central Regional Library, Polokwane
Central Reference Library, Mbombela
Central Reference Collection, Kimberley
Central Reference Library, Mmabatho

This report is available on the Stats SA website: www.statssa.gov.za

For technical enquiries please contact:

Mr Werner Ruch
Email: WernerR@statssa.gov.za

Ms Kerotse Mmatli
Email: KerotseM@statssa.gov.za

Table of Contents

List of tables v
List of figures xi
Preface xv
Acknowledgments xvi
Cautionary notes xvii
Abbreviations and acronyms xviii

Chapter 1 – Introduction and background 1
1.1 Introduction 2
1.2 Background to the Poverty Trends Report 2
1.3 Background on household expenditure surveys 3
1.4 Background to the national poverty lines 5
1.5 Notable changes to household expenditure data 10
1.6 Structure of this report 11

Chapter 2 – Key findings on poverty 13
2.1 Poverty from 2006 to 2023 14
2.2 Progress towards NDP targets 20
2.3 Economic and social conditions in the country 32

Chapter 3 – Findings on individual poverty 45
3.1 Introduction 46
3.2 Poverty and sex 46
3.3 Poverty and population group 49
3.4 Poverty and age 51
3.5 Poverty and education 55
3.6 Poverty and province 58
3.7 Poverty and settlement type 62
3.8 Poverty and household size 65
3.9 Poverty and metros 67
3.10 Summary of findings on individual poverty 70

Chapter 4 – Findings on household poverty 73
4.1 Introduction 74
4.2 Poverty and sex 74
4.3 Poverty and population group 77
4.4 Poverty and age 79
4.5 Poverty and education 83
4.6 Poverty and province 86
4.7 Poverty and settlement type 89
4.8 Poverty and household size 92
4.9 Poverty and metros 95
4.10 Summary of findings on household poverty 97

Chapter 5 – Rebasing of the national poverty lines 101
5.1 Poverty Lines 102
5.2 The Welfare Consumption Aggregate 102
5.3 Rebasing of the national poverty lines 103

Chapter 6 – Explanatory notes 1 11
6.1 The instruments of data collection 112
6.2 How the surveys were conducted 113
6.3 Data collection approaches 114
6.4 Time span 115
6.5 Sample coverage 115
6.6 Response details 115
6.7 Weighting 116
6.8 Reliability of estimates 116

Chapter 7 – Concepts and definitions 127

Annexures 131
Annexure A – Individual poverty measures by FPL 132
Annexure B – Individual poverty measures by UBPL 138
Annexure C – Individual poverty shares by FPL 144
Annexure D – Individual poverty shares by UBPL 147
Annexure E – Household poverty measures by FPL 150
Annexure F – Household poverty measures by UBPL 157
Annexure G – Household poverty shares by FPL 165
Annexure H – Household poverty shares by UBPL 168

References 171

List of Tables

Chapter 1

Table 1.3.1:	Comparison of household expenditure surveys since 2005 (IES & LCS)	4
Table 1.4.1:	NPL 2023 series of rebased inflation-adjusted poverty lines, 2006 to 2023 (per person per month in rands)	7
Table 1.4.2:	Comparison of the NPL 2011 Series and NPL 2023 Series, 2006 to 2023 (per person per month in rands)	9

Chapter 2

Table 2.1.1:	Poverty headcounts and the number of poor persons (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)	14
Table 2.1.2:	Poverty gaps (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)	19
Table 2.1.3:	Severity of poverty (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)	19
Table 2.2.1:	NDP poverty and inequality-related targets	21
Table 2.2.1.1:	Poverty headcount by province (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)	23
Table 2.2.2.1:	Gini coefficients based on income per capita by sex, population group and province (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)	24
Table 2.2.2.2:	Gini coefficients based on expenditure per capita by sex, population group and province (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)	27
Table 2.2.4.1:	Poverty headcount by province (FPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)	31

Chapter 3

Table 3.2.1:	Poverty headcount by sex (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)	47
Table 3.2.2:	Poverty shares by sex (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)	48
Table 3.3.1:	Poverty measures by population group (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)	50
Table 3.3.2:	Poverty shares by population group (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)	51
Table 3.4.1:	Poverty measures by age (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)	53
Table 3.4.2:	Poverty shares by age (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)	54
Table 3.5.1:	Poverty measures by educational level attained for individuals aged 18 years and older (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)	56
Table 3.5.2:	Poverty shares by educational level attained for individuals aged 18 years and older (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)	57
Table 3.6.1:	Poverty measures by province (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)	60
Table 3.6.2:	Poverty shares by province (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)	62

Table 3.7.1: Poverty measures by settlement type (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 63
Table 3.7.2: Poverty shares by settlement type (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 64
Table 3.8.1: Poverty measures by household size (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 66
Table 3.8.2: Poverty shares by household size (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 67
Table 3.9.1: Poverty measures by metropolitan municipality (LBPL) (2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 68
Table 3.9.2: Poverty shares by metropolitan municipality (LBPL) (2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 69

Chapter 4

Table 4.1.1: Poverty incidence at a household level and the number of poor households (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 74
Table 4.2.1: Household poverty measures by sex of the household head (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 75
Table 4.2.2: Household poverty shares by sex of the household head (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 76
Table 4.3.1: Household poverty measures by population group of the household head (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 78
Table 4.3.2: Household poverty shares by population group of the household head (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 79
Table 4.4.1: Household poverty measures by age of the household head (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 81
Table 4.4.2: Household poverty shares by age of the household head (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 82
Table 4.5.1: Household poverty measures by educational level of the household head (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 84
Table 4.5.2 Household poverty shares by educational level of the household head (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 85
Table 4.6.1: Household poverty measures by province (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 87
Table 4.6.2: Household poverty share by province (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 89
Table 4.7.1: Household poverty measures by settlement type (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 90
Table 4.7.2: Household poverty shares by settlement type (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 91
Table 4.8.1: Household poverty measures by household size (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 93

Table 4.8.2: Household poverty shares by household size (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 94
Table 4.9.1: Household poverty measures by metropolitan municipality (LBPL) (2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 96
Table 4.9.2: Household poverty shares by metropolitan municipality (LBPL) (2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 97

Chapter 5

Table 5.3.1: The 2023 Reference Food Basket 105
Table 5.3.2: The 2023 rebased national poverty lines 109

Chapter 6

Table 6.2.1: Data collection activities by week for the IES 2005/06 and LCS 2008/09 113
Table 6.2.2: Data collection activities by week for the IES 2010/11, LCS 2014/15 and IES 2022/23 114
Table 6.6.1: Response rates for IES and LCS surveys 116
Table 6.8.1: Coefficients of variation and confidence intervals for the poverty headcount by sex (FPL) 117
Table 6.8.2: Coefficients of variation and confidence intervals for the poverty headcount by sex (LBPL) 118
Table 6.8.3: Coefficients of variation and confidence intervals for the poverty headcount by sex (UBPL) 118
Table 6.8.4: Coefficients of variation and confidence intervals for the poverty headcount by population group (FPL) 119
Table 6.8.5: Coefficients of variation and confidence intervals for the poverty headcount by population group (LBPL) 120
Table 6.8.6: Coefficients of variation and confidence intervals for the poverty headcount by population group (UBPL) 121
Table 6.8.7: Coefficients of variation and confidence intervals for the poverty headcount by province (FPL) 122
Table 6.8.8: Coefficients of variation and confidence intervals for the poverty headcount by province (LBPL) 123
Table 6.8.9: Coefficients of variation and confidence intervals for the poverty headcount by province (UBPL) 125

Annexures

Table A3.2.1: Poverty measures by sex (FPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 132

Table A3.3.1: Poverty measures by population group (FPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 132

Table A3.4.1: Poverty measures by age (FPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 133

Table A3.5.1: Poverty measures by educational level attained for individuals aged 18 years and older (FPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 134

Table A3.6.1: Poverty measures by province (FPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 135

Table A3.7.1: Poverty measures by settlement type (FPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 136

Table A3.8.1: Poverty measures by household size (FPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 136

Table A3.9.1: Poverty measures by metropolitan municipality (FPL) (2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 137

Table B3.2.1: Poverty measures by sex (UBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 138

Table B3.3.1: Poverty measures by population group (UBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 138

Table B3.4.1: Poverty measures by age (UBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 139

Table B3.5.1: Poverty measures by educational level attained for individuals aged 18 years and older (UBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 140

Table B3.6.1: Poverty measures by province (UBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 141

Table B3.7.1: Poverty measures by settlement type (UBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 142

Table B3.8.1: Poverty measures by household size (UBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 142

Table B3.9.1: Poverty measures by metropolitan municipality (UBPL) (2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 143

Table C3.2.2: Poverty shares by sex (FPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 144

Table C3.3.2: Poverty shares by population group (FPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 144

Table C3.4.2: Poverty shares by age (FPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 144

Table C3.5.2: Poverty shares by educational level attained for individuals aged 18 years and older (FPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 145

Table C3.6.2: Poverty shares by province (FPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 145

Table C3.7.2: Poverty shares by settlement type (FPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 145

Table C3.8.2: Poverty shares by household size (FPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 146

Table C3.9.2: Poverty shares by metropolitan municipality (FPL) (2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 146

Table D3.2.2: Poverty shares by sex (UBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 147
Table D3.3.2: Poverty shares by population group (UBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 147
Table D3.4.2: Poverty shares by age (UBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 147
Table D3.5.2: Poverty shares by educational level attained for individuals aged 18 years and older (UBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 148
Table D3.6.2: Poverty shares by province (UBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 148
Table D3.7.2: Poverty shares by settlement type (UBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 148
Table D3.8.2: Poverty shares by household size (UBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 149
Table D3.9.2: Poverty shares by metropolitan municipality (UBPL) (2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 149
Table E4.2.1: Household poverty measures by sex of the household head (FPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 150
Table E4.3.1: Household poverty measures by population group of the household head (FPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 150
Table E4.4.1: Household poverty measures by age of the household head (FPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 151
Table E4.5.1: Household poverty measures by educational level of the household head(FPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 152
Table E4.6.1: Household poverty measures by province (FPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 153
Table E4.7.1: Household poverty measures by settlement type (FPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 154
Table E4.8.1: Household poverty measures by household size (FPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 155
Table E4.9.1: Household poverty measures by metropolitan municipality (FPL) (2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 156
Table F4.2.1: Household poverty measures by sex of the household head (UBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 157
Table F4.3.1: Household poverty measures by population group of the household head (UBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 158
Table F4.4.1: Household poverty measures by age of the household head (UBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 159
Table F4.5.1: Household poverty measures by educational level of the household head (UBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 160
Table F4.6.1: Household poverty measures by province (UBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 161
Table F4.7.1: Household poverty measures by settlement type (UBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 162

Table F4.8.1: Household poverty measures by household size (UBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 163
Table F4.9.1: Household poverty measures by metropolitan municipality (UBPL) (2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 164
Table G4.2.2: Household poverty shares by sex of the household head (FPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 165
Table G4.3.2: Household poverty shares by population group of the household head (FPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 165
Table G4.4.2: Household poverty shares by age of the household head (FPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 165
Table G4.5.2: Household poverty shares by educational level of the household head (FPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 166
Table G4.6.2: Household poverty shares by province (FPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 166
Table G4.7.2: Household poverty shares by settlement type (FPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 166
Table G4.8.2: Household poverty shares by household size (FPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 167
Table G4.9.2: Household poverty shares by metropolitan municipality (FPL) (2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 167
Table H4.2.2: Household poverty shares by sex of the household head (UBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 168
Table H4.3.2: Household poverty shares by population group of the household head (UBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 168
Table H4.4.2: Household poverty shares by age of the household head (UBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 168
Table H4.5.2: Household poverty shares by educational level of the household head (UBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 169
Table H4.6.2: Household poverty shares by province (UBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 169
Table H4.7.2: Household poverty shares by settlement type (UBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 169
Table H4.8.2: Household poverty shares by household size (UBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 170
Table H4.9.2: Household poverty shares by metropolitan municipality (UBPL) (2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 170

List of Figures

Chapter 1

Figure 1.4.1: NPL 2023 series of rebased inflation-adjusted poverty lines, 2006 to 2023 (per person per month in rands) 8

Chapter 2

Figure 2.1.1: The number of poor and non-poor persons in South Africa (in thousands) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 15

Figure 2.1.2: The number of poor and non-poor persons in South Africa based on the FPL (in thousands) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 16

Figure 2.1.3: The number of poor and non-poor persons in South Africa based on the LBPL (in thousands) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 16

Figure 2.1.4: The number of poor and non-poor persons in South Africa based on the UBPL (in thousands) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 17

Figure 2.1.5: Poverty headcounts based on the FPL, LBPL and UBPL (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 18

Figure 2.2.1.1: Proportion of population living below the lower-bound poverty line (LBPL) by sex (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 22

Figure 2.2.1.2: Proportion of population living below the lower-bound poverty line (LBPL) by province (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 23

Figure 2.2.2.1: Gini coefficients based on income per capita by sex (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 25

Figure 2.2.2.2: Gini coefficients based on income per capita by population group (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 26

Figure 2.2.3.1: The distribution of per capita income shares (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 28

Figure 2.2.4.1: Proportion of population living below the food poverty line (FPL) by sex (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 29

Figure 2.2.4.2: Proportion of population living below the food poverty line (FPL) by population group (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 30

Figure 2.2.4.3: Proportion of population living below the food poverty line (FPL) by province (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 31

Figure 2.3.1.1: Population of South Africa over time between 2006 and 2023 33

Figure 2.3.1.2: Percentage distribution of the population by province (2006-2023) 33

Figure 2.3.1.3: South Africa's age structure by 5-year age groups (2006 vs 2023) 34

Figure 2.3.1.4: Ageing index by census year and sex (1996-2022) 35

Figure 2.3.1.5: Adolescent birth rates per 1 000 women in South Africa, CRVS (2010–2022) 35

Figure 2.3.1.6: Distribution of population by broad age groups, Census (2001-2022) 36

Figure 2.3.2.1: Annual Gross Domestic Product growth for 2006-2023 (at 2015 constant prices) 37
Figure 2.3.3.1: Number of unemployed persons and the unemployment rate from 2004 to 2023 38
Figure 2.3.4.1: Headline CPI, year-on-year percentage changes (2009–2023) 39
Figure 2.3.4.2: Year-on-year percentage changes in headline and selected CPI components (2009–2023) 40
Figure 2.3.5.1: Repo rates (2005–2024) 41
Figure 2.3.5.2: Prime lending rates (2005–2024) 42
Figure 2.3.6.1: Retail sales (2005–2024) 42
Figure 2.3.7.1: Number of social grants disbursed between 2000 and 2025 43
Figure 2.3.7.2: Share of different social grants disbursed between 2017 and 2025 44

Chapter 3

Figure 3.2.1: Poverty headcount by sex (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 47
Figure 3.2.2: Poverty shares by sex (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 48
Figure 3.3.1: Poverty headcount by population group (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 49
Figure 3.4.1: Poverty headcount by age (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 52
Figure 3.4.2: Poverty headcount by age (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 52
Figure 3.4.3: Poverty shares by age (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 54
Figure 3.5.1: Poverty headcount by educational level attained for individuals aged 18 years and older (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 55
Figure 3.5.2: Poverty shares by educational level attained for individuals aged 18 years and older (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 57
Figure 3.6.1: Poverty headcount by province (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 58
Figure 3.6.2: Poverty shares by province (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 61
Figure 3.7.1: Poverty headcount by settlement type (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 63
Figure 3.7.2: Poverty shares by settlement type (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 64
Figure 3.8.1: Poverty headcount by household size (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023) 65

Chapter 4

Figure 4.2.1.	Incidence of household poverty by sex of the household head (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)	75
Figure 4.2.2:	Household poverty shares by sex of the household head (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)	76
Figure 4.3.1:	Incidence of household poverty by population group of the household head (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)	77
Figure 4.4.1:	Incidence of household poverty by age of the household head (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)	80
Figure 4.4.2:	Incidence of household poverty by age of the household head (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)	80
Figure 4.4.3:	Household poverty shares by age of household head (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)	82
Figure 4.5.1:	Incidence of household poverty by educational level of the household head (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)	83
Figure 4.5.2	Household poverty shares by educational level of the household head (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)	85
Figure 4.6.1:	Incidence of household poverty by province (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)	86
Figure 4.6.2:	Household poverty shares by province (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)	88
Figure 4.7.1:	Incidence of household poverty by settlement type (LPBL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)	90
Figure 4.7.2:	Household poverty shares by settlement type (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)	91
Figure 4.8.1:	Incidence of household poverty by household size (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)	92
Figure 4.8.2:	Household poverty shares by household size (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)	94

Preface

This report presents poverty levels and trends based on data collected by Stats SA through the Income & Expenditure Survey (IES) and Living Conditions Survey (LCS) programme. These data sources provide us with comparable data points for 2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and now 2023, based on the results of the IES 2022/23 which were released earlier this year. The poverty indicators in this report have been derived using household expenditure data collected through a combination of the diary and recall methods and were applied against newly rebased national poverty lines benchmarked to the IES 2022/23 expenditure profile. The report focuses on the poverty profile of individuals and households at national and provincial levels.

Risenga Maluleke

Statistician-General

Acknowledgements

Stats SA would like to thank the World Bank for their tremendous contribution and unwavering support in helping the organisation continuously improve and advance poverty measurement in South Africa. Their technical and methodological assistance was critical in reviewing and updating the welfare consumption aggregate used for poverty analysis in this report, as well as the rebasing and construction of the new national poverty lines. The World Bank's quality enhancement reviews and assessments of the inputs used and outputs produced to generate our updated money-metric poverty series was very beneficial given the numerous changes and improvements that have been implemented since the last Poverty Trends Report was published in 2017. The robust partnership between Stats SA and the World Bank continues to enrich and strengthen the country's data ecosystem and ensures South Africa has the necessary knowledge, capacity and tools to fight and overcome the scourge of poverty.

Cautionary Notes

Readers are cautioned to take the following into consideration:

Rounding off

Due to rounding, the displayed totals in the tables do not always match the sum of the displayed rows or columns

Lower response rates

Household expenditure surveys, such as the Living Conditions Survey (LCS) and the Income and Expenditure Survey (IES), are amongst the most demanding type of survey run by statistical agencies both for those implementing the survey and the households that are sampled to participate. These surveys often suffer from a higher than average number of refusals relative to other household surveys in Stats SA's survey programme, such as the General Household Survey (GHS) or Quarterly Labour Force Survey (QLFS). Unfortunately, the LCS 2014/15 and recent IES 2022/23 had notably lower response rates than previous household expenditure surveys (see Table 6.6.1 in the explanatory notes chapter). The challenge of non-response was especially problematic in Gauteng. Given that Gauteng accounts for well over a third of all household expenditure in the country, lower response rates – especially amongst high-income households in this province – means that we could see larger underreporting in various expenditure areas, such as food, beverages and tobacco.

Impact of the COVID-19 pandemic

A critical event that occurred during the lengthy 8-year data gap between the 2015 and 2023 survey estimates was the global COVID-19 pandemic. Although data collection for the IES 2022/23 occurred mostly after the pandemic peaks of 2020 and 2021, it is important to note the lingering impact this pandemic could have had on household spending and consumption patterns. Furthermore, in response to the pandemic, government implemented a social assistance programme to provide financial relief through the introduction of a special SRD grant. This financial intervention by government blunted some of the heavy impact household budgets felt during this period.

Abbreviations and Acronyms

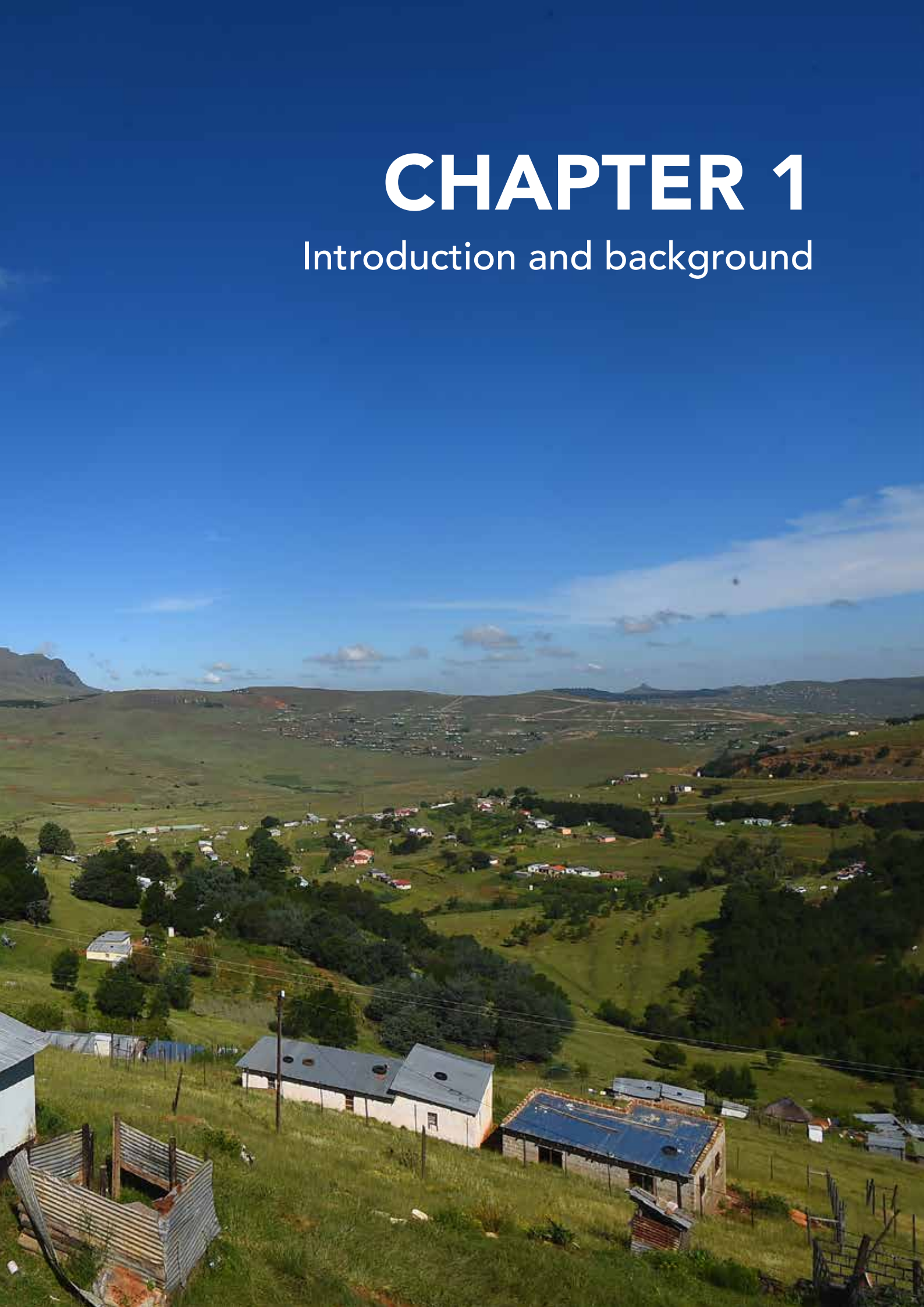
ABR	Adolescent Birth Rate
CAPI	Computer-Assisted Personal Interviewing
CATI	Computer-Assisted Telephone Interviewing
CoBN	Cost of Basic Needs
COICOP	Classification of Individual Consumption According to Purpose
COVID-19	Coronavirus disease 2019
CPI	Consumer Price Index
CPS	Continuous Population Survey
CSG	Child Support Grant
CV	Coefficient of Variation
DU	Dwelling Unit
EA	Enumeration Area
EC	Eastern Cape
FPL	Food Poverty Line
FS	Free State
GDP	Gross Domestic Product
GHS	General Household Survey
GIF	Geospatial Information Frame
GNU	Government of National Unity
GP	Gauteng
HFCE	Household Final Consumption Expenditure
IES	Income & Expenditure Survey
IIF	Integrated Indicator Framework
IMR	Infant Mortality Rate

ITR	Inequality Trends Report
Kcal	Kilocalories
KZN	KwaZulu-Natal
LBPL	Lower-Bound Poverty Line
LCS	Living Conditions Survey
LFS	Labour Force Survey
LP	Limpopo
MP	Mpumalanga
MPC	Monetary Policy Committee
MS	Master Sample
MTDP	Medium Term Development Plan
MTSF	Medium Term Strategic Framework
MYPE	Mid-Year Population Estimates
NC	Northern Cape
NDP	National Development Plan
NPC	National Planning Commission
NPL	National Poverty Lines
NSO	National Statistics Office
NW	North West
OAG	Old Age Grant
OHS	October Household Survey
PAPI	Paper-and-Pen Interviewing
PTR	Poverty Trends Report
QLFS	Quarterly Labour Force Survey
QR	Quantile Regression

RDP	Reconstruction & Development Programme
SARB	South African Reserve Bank
SASSA	South African Social Security Agency
SDG	Sustainable Development Goals
SRD	Social Relief of Distress
Stats SA	Statistics South Africa
TFR	Total Fertility Rate
U5MR	Under-Five Mortality Rate
UBPL	Upper-Bound Poverty Line
UN	United Nations
WC	Western Cape
WCA	Welfare Consumption Aggregate
ZAR	South African Rand

CHAPTER 1

Introduction and background



1.1 – Introduction

Household expenditure surveys, like the Income & Expenditure Survey (IES) and Living Conditions Survey (LCS), are fundamental components to a survey programme of any national statistics office (NSO). They are an essential building block for the consumer price index (CPI) to stay current with the changing spending and consumption patterns of the country, and are the best sources of data for the measurement of money-metric poverty and inequality.

As stated in the Reconstruction and Development Programme (RDP) (1994) and reaffirmed in the National Development Plan (NDP) (2012), sustainable national development depends on reducing poverty and inequality to ensure that all individuals can attain a basic standard of living and participate meaningfully in social and economic life. Therefore, the Medium Term Development Plan (MTDP) 2024-2029 highlights that reducing poverty and addressing the high cost of living are key priorities of the Government of National Unity (GNU). It aims to achieve this through targeted interventions that enhance livelihoods, improve access to affordable goods and services, and strengthen social safety nets.

The NDP and Vision for 2030, our guiding framework for development, is anchored by two fundamental objectives, namely the elimination of poverty and reduction of inequality. Success of the plan will be measured by the degree to which the lives and opportunities of the poorest South Africans are transformed in a sustainable manner. Through the data provided by the IES and LCS, we now have five data points that allow us to report on the progress towards meeting these priorities, namely 2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023.

1.2 – Background to the Poverty Trends Report

The PTR 2025 will be the third edition of the Poverty Trends Report (PTR) produced by Statistics South Africa. The first edition of this poverty report was published in 2014 and analysed money-metric poverty levels between 2006 and 2011. This original report utilised the first official set of national poverty lines (the NPL 2000 Series) developed by Stats SA in 2008, but only formally published in 2012 in preparation for the PTR 2014. The second edition of the PTR was published in 2017 and analysed money-metric poverty levels between 2006 and 2015 using the then newly published results of the LCS 2014/15. The poverty estimates reported in the PTR 2017 were based on the current NPL 2011 Series which was introduced in 2015 and is regularly updated through annual inflation adjustments to ensure the poverty lines remain current with changing prices.

This third edition of the PTR aims to analyse money-metric poverty levels between 2006 and 2023. The new 2023 poverty estimates are based on the results of the IES 2022/23. These new estimates will utilise the newly rebased national poverty lines (the NPL 2023 Series), which have been developed in partnership with the World Bank to ensure they are robust and incorporate the latest international standards around poverty measurement.

1.3 – Background on household expenditure surveys

Household expenditure surveys are a critical component of measuring and understanding the household economy of a country. Stats SA conducts two household expenditure surveys as part of its household survey programme, namely the Income & Expenditure Survey and Living Conditions Survey. Unfortunately, due to the survey's expensive data collection methodology and requirements, these surveys are only conducted on a periodic basis when funding allows.

Stats SA has conducted seven large-scale household expenditure surveys since democracy in 1994. However, due to an important change in the methodological design of the survey in 2005, there was a break in the organisation's money-metric series which currently only includes the five most recent surveys, namely the IES 2005/06, LCS 2008/09, IES 2010/11, LCS 2014/15, and IES 2022/23. Unfortunately, data from the IES 1995 and IES 2000 are not directly comparable with the estimates generated since 2005 due to the methodological change. Prior to 2005, the IES used a recall only methodology and was conducted in conjunction with other household surveys, namely the October Household Survey[1] (OHS) in 1995 and with the Labour Force Survey[2] (LFS) and parts of the OHS in 2000. This entailed both the IES and the OHS/LFS questionnaires to be administered to one household at the same time.

In 2005, Stats SA took the decision to move away from a recall-only methodology and introduced the use of a combination of diary and recall methods to capture household expenditure information for the IES 2005/06. This was done to improve data quality and to bring the organisation in line with international best practice. This new data collection approach was cemented as an organisational standard after the implementation of the LCS 2008/09.

For the IES 2010/11, the organisation revised the structure of its diary methodology by reducing the diary-keeping period from one month to two weeks in an effort to reduce survey costs and improve diary reporting by reducing the burden on respondents. Despite the reduction to two weeks, the survey was still designed to ensure diary data for every day across the whole 12-month data collection period. In other words, where previously there were 12 survey periods (one per month), the IES 2010/11 introduce a 26 survey period design (each period covering exactly two weeks) that covered the 52 weeks of the year. This 26 survey period model was also used for the LCS 2014/15 and the recent IES 2022/23. The shift from a one-month diary to a two-week diary saw dramatic improvements to the efficiency of fieldwork, as well as reduced the fieldwork force requirements by about 27% between LCS 2008/09 levels and IES 2010/11 levels. Thus, beyond the benefits it offered in terms of reducing respondent burden resulting in better diary data, it also helped to partially reduce some of the significant financial costs associated with these types of surveys. Further improvements were implemented for IES 2022/23 data collection, most notably (a) moving from the previous paper-and-pen interviewing (PAPI) collection method to a computer-assisted personal interviewing (CAPI) based method – making the IES 2022/23 the organisation's first digital household expenditure survey – and (b) adopting the new 2018 Classification of Individual Consumption According to Purpose (COICOP) classification system (previous IES and LCS surveys used the COICOP 1999).

1 The October Household Survey was revamped and replaced by the General Household Survey (GHS) in 2002

2 The Labour Force Survey was reengineered into the Quarterly Labour Force Survey (QLFS) in 2008

The primary purpose of any IES is to provide household consumption expenditure data to CPI for the selection and weighting of a new basket of goods and services used for measuring inflation and ensuring price stability in the country. The IES 2005/06 and IES 2010/11 were purposefully streamlined to focus on just money-metric data items as CPI objectives were deemed the most crucial. Fortunately, these data items are also the same information required to report on money-metric poverty and inequality indicators and so, these surveys also carried secondary poverty-related objectives. However, this limited the survey's ability to report on other aspects of poverty, such as multidimensional- and subjective-related poverty indicators, which have become increasingly important and relevant for stakeholders, especially for the United Nations' (UN) Sustainable Development Goals (SDG) reporting purposes.

To address the lack of official multidimensional and subjective poverty data, Stats SA initiated a process in 2007 to develop and implement a purpose-driven and user-guided multi-topic poverty survey, namely the LCS. This was the organisation's first data collection tool specifically designed to measure the multidimensional nature of poverty. The nucleus of the LCS maintained the detailed income and expenditure modules of the IES; however, it also included a host of other questions on assets, housing, access to services, living circumstances, perceived well-being and health status that, when combined with the money-metric data, allowed Stats SA to field its broadest poverty measurement tool. The first LCS was implemented in 2008/09 and a second round was conducted in 2014/15. The recent IES 2022/23 incorporated many additional content elements into its questionnaire, making this new survey more comparable to a LCS round relative to prior IES rounds. Table 1.3.1 below compares various features of the five IES and LCS surveys conducted since 2005.

Table 1.3.1: Comparison of household expenditure surveys since 2005 (IES & LCS)

Distinguishing features		IES 2005/06	LCS 2008/09	IES 2010/11	LCS 2014/15	IES 2022/23
Reference year		2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
Sample size		24 000 DUs	31 473 DUs	31 419 DUs	30 818 DUs	31 042 DUs
Methodology		Diary and recall	Diary and recall	Diary and recall	Diary and recall	Diary and recall
Household questionnaire		Five modules	Seven modules	Four modules	Four modules	Four modules
Diaries		Four weekly diaries	Four weekly diaries	Two weekly diaries	Two weekly diaries	Two weekly diaries
Data collection method		PAPI	PAPI	PAPI	PAPI	CAPI
Expenditure data collection approach	Goods	Acquisition approach	Acquisition and payment approaches	Acquisition approach	Acquisition approach	Acquisition approach
	Services	Payment approach	Payment approach	Payment approach	Payment approach	Payment approach
	Own production	Consumption approach	Consumption approach	Consumption approach	Consumption approach	Consumption approach
Data collection period		22 Aug 2005 to 10 Sep 2006	25 Aug 2008 to 11 Sep 2009	23 Aug 2010 to 4 Sep 2011	13 Oct 2014 to 25 Oct 2015	7 Nov 2022 to 26 Nov 2023
Diary-keeping period		1 Sep 2005 to 31 Aug 2006	1 Sep 2008 to 31 Aug 2009	30 Aug 2010 to 29 Aug 2011	20 Oct 2014 to 19 Oct 2015	14 Nov 2022 to 13 Nov 2023
Survey midpoint		March 2006	March 2009	March 2011	April 2015	May 2023
Number of survey periods		12	12	26	26	26
Visits per household		Six	Six	Four	Four	Four
Classification of expenditure items		COICOP 1999	COICOP 1999	COICOP 1999	COICOP 1999	COICOP 2018
National response rate		96,8%	88,0%	91,6%	84,9%	81,9%

Unfortunately, due to budget challenges and later the COVID-19 pandemic – which notably altered the data collection environment for a survey that required repeated face-to-face contact with respondents for diary collection – there has been a lengthy 8-year data gap in the IES/LCS programme. The current 2015 estimates – which were sourced from the LCS 2014/15 – are now updated with new 2023 estimates sourced from the IES 2022/23 which conducted primary data collections operations between November 2022 and November 2023.

1.4 – Background to the national poverty lines

Poverty lines are important tools that allow for the statistical reporting of poverty levels and patterns, as well as the planning, monitoring and evaluation of poverty reduction programmes and policies. In 2007, Stats SA was officially tasked by government to establish a threshold that could be used in standardising the money-metric measurement of poverty for the country. After extensive stakeholder consultations, expert engagements and several discussion documents on the appropriate approach for poverty measurement in South Africa, Stats SA published the country's first official national poverty lines (NPL) in 2012 (the NPL 2000 Series). Three lines were produced, namely the food poverty line (FPL), lower-bound poverty line (LBPL), and upper-bound poverty line (UBPL). Stats SA adopted the internationally recognised Cost of Basic Needs (CoBN) approach to construct these lines which links welfare to the consumption of goods and services, and the organisation continues to use this methodology for the recently rebased NPL 2023 Series.

In line with international standards to rebase national poverty lines at least once every ten years, Stats SA published rebased poverty lines – the NPL 2011 Series – in 2015 which used household expenditure data sourced from the IES 2010/11. This NPL series has been in operation since then, but will now be replaced with the newly rebased series benchmarked to IES 2022/23 results. This new NPL 2023 Series was developed in preparation for the PTR 2025 and represents the organisation's second rebasing of the NPLs.

- NPL 2000 Series – The first set of national poverty lines were developed in 2008 based on the results of the IES 2000. These lines became known as the NPL 2000 Series (given that they were benchmarked to the expenditure profile sourced from the IES 2000). The construction of these lines was documented in a technical report entitled "Measuring poverty in South Africa: Methodological report on the development of the poverty lines for statistical reporting" (D0300) that was completed in 2008; however, this technical report and subsequent lines (the NPL 2000 Series) was only officially published by the organisation in 2012 in preparation for the PTR 2014.
- NPL 2011 Series – Following the release of the PTR 2014, the organisation began work to rebase the NPL series in 2015. These new lines were benchmarked to the expenditure profile of the IES 2010/11 and their construction was documented in a technical report entitled "Methodological report on rebasing of national poverty lines and development of pilot provincial poverty lines" (Report No. 03-10-11). The NPL 2011 Series is the current official NPL series published by the organisation; however, this will be replaced by the NPL 2023 Series with the release of the PTR 2025.
- NPL 2023 Series – These are the newly rebased poverty lines benchmarked to the expenditure profile of the IES 2022/23. The rebasing of the NPL series commenced in March 2025 after the release of the IES 2022/23 findings (P0100) in January 2025.

This rebasing has been done in partnership with the World Bank and a joint technical report entitled "Methodological report on the rebasing of the national poverty lines using the Income & Expenditure Survey 2022/23" (Report No. 03-10-30) documents the methodological processes followed, as well as all the improvements and changes adopted.

Unfortunately, due to the challenge of infrequent IES and LCS surveys since 2015, the money-metric poverty series has a lengthy 8-year data gap. Given international standards around NPL rebasing, processes that should happen every 10 years, now occurs as frequently as the collection of new household expenditure data. Thus, there is no time to build stability in the money-metric poverty series; only one new edition of the PTR has been published since the introduction of the NPL 2011 Series (i.e. the PTR 2017) and now we already need to move to the NPL 2023 Series for the PTR 2025.

Due to changes in the cost of living (i.e. price changes for goods and services), we are required to implement annual inflation-adjustments to the NPL series to maintain their integrity and relevance over time. These adjustments are published annually in the NPL statistical release (P0310.1). While the original NPL series was linked to March prices of their respective years, this standard changed in 2015 to April prices to align with the midpoint of the LCS 2014/15 (previous IES and LCS surveys all had March as their midpoints). As household expenditure surveys like the IES and LCS collect detailed income and expenditure information over a two-year reference period, this data needs to be price adjusted (i.e. inflated/deflated using CPI) to the respective survey's midpoint to allow for proper comparison and analysis. The midpoint for the IES 2022/23 is May 2023, and thus, all income and expenditure data linked to the survey has been inflated/deflated to May 2023 prices accordingly. Therefore, as was done in 2015, the NPL series as from 2023 had to also be adjusted to a new reference month, namely May.

1.4.1 Purpose of the National Poverty Lines

The primary purpose of the national poverty lines is to provide a tool for the statistical measurement of money-metric poverty. More specifically, the NPLs were developed to:

a. Provide a consistent and constant benchmark against which progress on a money-metric/expenditure-based dimension of poverty can be monitored;
b. Improve the country's ability to target developmental policies and programmes, both towards specific groups and/or regions (through determining the poverty profile); and
c. Increase knowledge production for policy development and reform around poverty reduction and eradication.

It is important to note that the national poverty lines were not designed to be used for:

- Determination of equitable share to provinces
- Setting the national minimum wage
- Determining eligibility thresholds
- Determining the amount to be paid for social grants

Nevertheless, the NPLs can help inform and serve as a data input into some of these processes in ways that could create pro-poor dimensions.

1.4.2 Poverty lines for PTR 2025

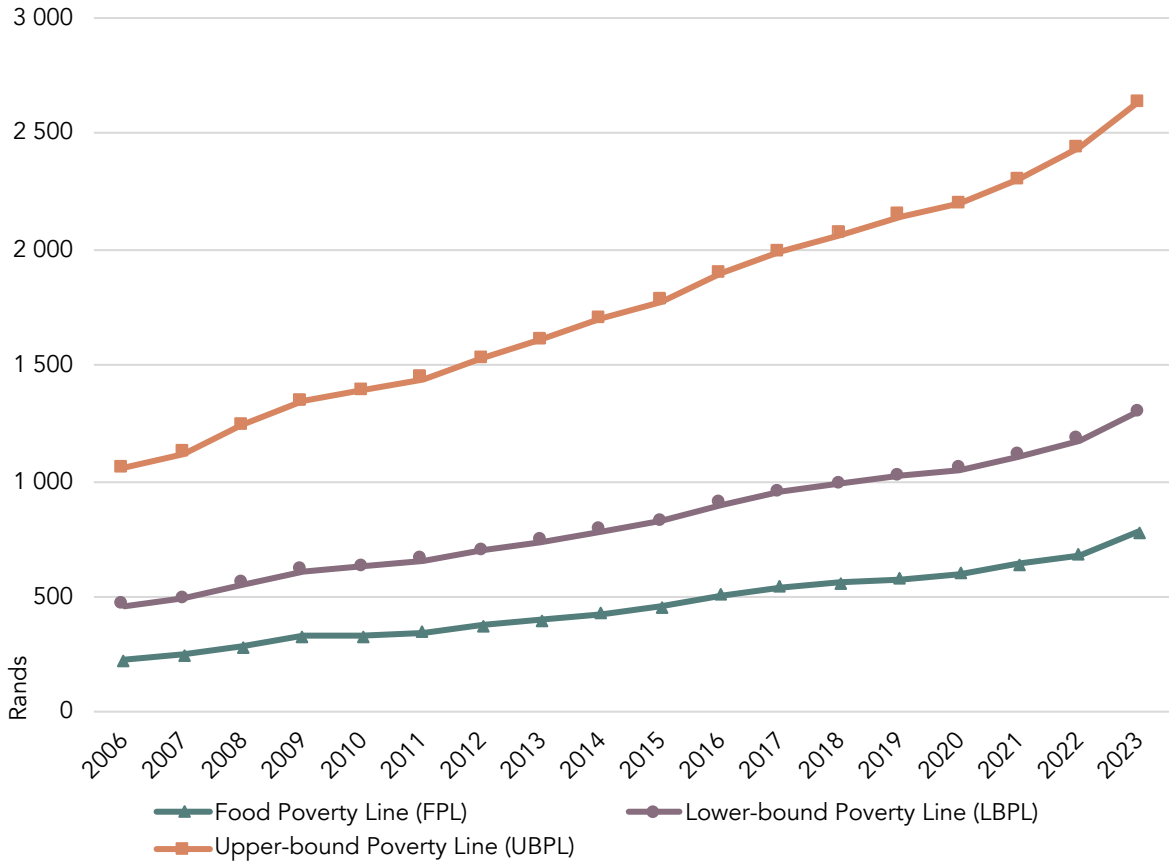
Table 1.4.1 below shows the line values for 2006 to 2023 based on the new NPL 2023 Series that is used for poverty analysis in this report. These lines are benchmarked to household expenditure data sourced from the IES 2022/23 and incorporate various improvements to the welfare consumption aggregate (WCA) used for their construction. The rows marked in grey represent the line values applied to the five data points analysed.

Table 1.4.1: NPL 2023 series of rebased inflation-adjusted poverty lines, 2006 to 2023 (per person per month in rands)

Year	Food poverty line *(FPL)*	Lower-bound poverty line *(LBPL)*	Upper-bound poverty line *(UBPL)*
2006	228	461	1 054
2007	247	492	1 118
2008	286	555	1 242
2009	328	614	1 344
2010	331	629	1 391
2011	348	656	1 443
2012	377	701	1 526
2013	398	739	1 608
2014	429	787	1 703
2015	454	827	1 777
2016	510	900	1 896
2017	544	951	1 989
2018	562	985	2 066
2019	579	1 021	2 148
2020	603	1 053	2 199
2021	641	1 108	2 299
2022	680	1 176	2 441
2023	777	1 300	2 635

Note: Due to varying survey midpoints, the reference month used for the lines will also vary. Poverty lines between 2006 and 2014 are linked to March prices of those years, while lines between 2015 and 2022 are linked to April prices. The 2023 lines are linked to May prices.

Figure 1.4.1: NPL 2023 series of rebased inflation-adjusted poverty lines, 2006 to 2023 (per person per month in rands)



Compared to the current NPL 2011 series which was benchmarked to IES 2010/11 results, the new lines are all higher, especially the LBPL and UBPL (see Table 1.4.2). Across the series, the NPL 2023 FPLs are on average roughly R13 higher than the NPL 2011 FPLs; the NPL 2023 LBPLs are approximately R175 higher on average than the NPL 2011 LBPLs; and the NPL 2023 UBPLs are roughly R774 higher on average than the NPL 2011 UBPLs. While there was a slight increase in the value of the FPLs (i.e. the food component), the non-food components of the LBPLs and UBPLs are notably higher in the NPL 2023 series compared to the NPL 2011 series. While some of this change is the natural result of shifting consumption profiles of households living in 2023 compared to 2011, the more significant reason is related to how outliers in non-food expenditure were treated during the computation of the rebased lines (see Report No. 03-10-30 for more information). Table 1.4.2 compares the lines values between the NPL 2011 Series and NPL 2023 Series for overlapping years.

Table 1.4.2: Comparison of the NPL 2011 Series and NPL 2023 Series, 2006 to 2023 (per person per month in rands)

Year	Food poverty line *(FPL)*		Lower-bound poverty line *(LBPL)*		Upper-bound poverty line *(UBPL)*	
	NPL 2011	*NPL 2023*	*NPL 2011*	*NPL 2023*	*NPL 2011*	*NPL 2023*
2006	219	228	370	461	575	1 054
2007	237	247	396	492	613	1 118
2008	274	286	447	555	682	1 242
2009	318	328	456	614	709	1 344
2010	320	331	466	629	733	1 391
2011	335	348	501	656	779	1 443
2012	366	377	541	701	834	1 526
2013	386	398	572	739	883	1 608
2014	417	429	613	787	942	1 703
2015	441	454	647	827	992	1 777
2016	498	510	714	900	1 077	1 896
2017	531	544	758	951	1 138	1 989
2018	547	562	785	985	1 183	2 066
2019	561	579	810	1 021	1 227	2 148
2020	585	603	840	1 053	1 268	2 199
2021	624	641	890	1 108	1 335	2 299
2022	663	680	945	1 176	1 417	2 441
2023	760	777	1 058	1 300	1 558	2 635

Note: Due to varying survey midpoints, the reference month used for the lines will also vary. Poverty lines between 2006 and 2014 are linked to March prices of those years, while lines between 2015 and 2022 are linked to April prices. The 2023 lines are linked to May prices.

The change in how non-food expenditure outliers were treated is further observed in the average share the non-food component compromises in the new lines. For the NPL 2011 LBPLs, the average food share is approximately 67,6% and the average non-food share is 32,4%. For the new NPL 2023 series, the LBPLs have a lower average food share at 54,9% and a higher non-food share at 45,1%. For the UBPL, the average food share drops from 44,3% to 25,6%, while the non-food share increases from 55,7% to 74,4%. Thus, the non-food component is now playing a more significant role in the design and shape of the rebased NPL 2023 series and will ultimately result in higher poverty rates as reflected in the PTR 2025.

1.5 – Notable changes to household expenditure data

There have been several major changes implemented for (or impacting on) the analysis conducted in PTR 2025. These changes include:

- Adoption of the COICOP 2018 classification system for the IES 2022/23 which required updating all previous IES and LCS data sets (which were based on COICOP 1999) to align with the new COICOP 2018 system.
- The welfare consumption aggregate (WCA) used for poverty analysis and the construction of the rebased poverty lines was updated and expanded to include new COICOP items based on the latest poverty literature.
- Recalibration of previous IES and LCS weights to the 2022 mid-year population estimates (MYPE). Due to the special sample used for the IES 2005/06 which was not drawn from the organisation's standard Master Sample (MS), the 2006 estimates could unfortunately not be recalibrated.
- The adoption of a new regression model to estimate rental costs for owner-occupied dwellings in the WCA. The previous method applied a rental yield on the total dwelling unit (DU) value to estimate these housing costs.
- The country's three national poverty lines were rebased to reflect the latest household consumption and expenditure patterns as measured by the IES 2022/23. Additional improvements were also implemented during the computation of the rebased lines based on the latest poverty literature and technical guidance from the World Bank.
- The IES 2022/23 was Stats SA's first digital household expenditure survey which saw the organisation move from a PAPI-based data collection approach to CAPI digital collection system. However, the survey did maintain a PAPI element to enable the household's self-enumeration of weekly diaries to track daily acquisitions and expenditure. These paper diaries were coded and captured into a CAPI tool by survey officer's after the diaries were collected from households. The move to a digital environment enabled real-time quality assurance on diary results which improved the overall quality of diary data relative to previous surveys.

The combination of all these improvements and changes to the data (including how we collect it) means that there have been some notable changes to the poverty estimates previously reported in the PTR 2017.

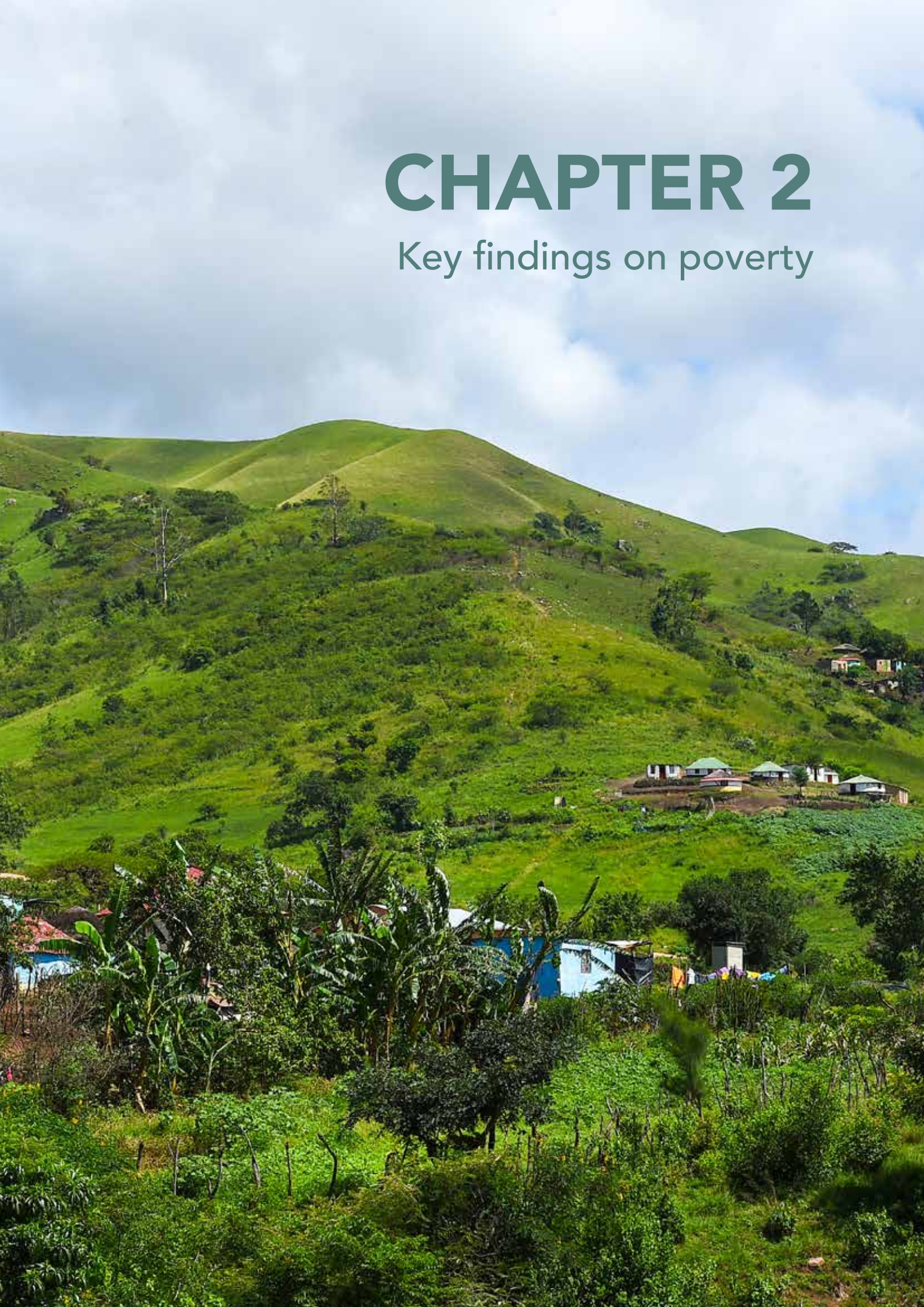
1.6 – Structure of this report

This report is broken into seven chapters. Chapter 1 provides an introduction to and background on the data sources and national poverty lines used for the PTR 2025, as well as highlights some of the notable changes impacting on the analysis. Chapter 2 presents the key findings on poverty in South Africa between 2006 and 2023, as well as provides progress on NDP targets. This chapter also includes a brief section showing changes between 2015 and 2023 to help contextualise these findings in the larger data ecosystem of the country. Chapters 3 and 4 contain the bulk of the report's detailed findings with Chapter 3 analysing individual poverty and Chapter 4 investigating poverty at a household level. Chapter 5 provides a brief summary on the construction and rebasing of the national poverty lines to the results of the IES 2022/23 (for detailed information see Report No. 03-10-30). Chapter 6 provides explanatory notes that will offer greater detail into the design and implementation of household expenditure surveys. Lastly, Chapter 7 contains information on the relevant concepts and definitions.

This report will prioritise analysis of money-metric poverty using the LBPL for Chapters 3 and 4 to better align it with the poverty targets contained in the NDP (previous PTRs focused on the UBPL). Supplementary tables will be provided in the four annexures at the end of the report that give poverty measures and shares for the FPL and UBPL at a national level. In early 2026, Stats SA plans to publish a separate set of corresponding tables at a provincial level in Excel format to further empower users. Although, users should be cautioned that due to the challenge of non-response generally experienced with household expenditure surveys, combined with sample loss resulting from out-of-scope dwelling units, some cross tabulations at the provincial level might have too small sample sizes to yield reliable estimates. This is particularly relevant to analysis linked to population group, specifically whites and Indians/Asians.

CHAPTER 2

Key findings on poverty



2.1 – Poverty from 2006 to 2023

Poverty is a complex problem that manifests itself in economic, social and political ways. While most people can instinctively distinguish when somebody is "poor", there is no universal or single definition of poverty. Rather, there is a spectrum of definitions and approaches that are applied to help us better understand and measure poverty. Stats SA has adopted three primary approaches to poverty measurement in South Africa, namely a (1) money-metric approach, (2) multidimensional approach, and (3) subjective approach. This report focuses on the first approach analysing poverty in money-metric terms.

The money-metric approach relies on the use of poverty lines to distinguish between the poor and non-poor. In South Africa, we have adopted three national poverty lines built using the CoBN approach, namely the food poverty line (FPL), lower-bound poverty line (LBPL) and upper-bound poverty line (UBPL). Each line is used to measure different degrees of poverty. Those who live below the FPL cannot afford to buy or to consume enough food to meet the minimum daily energy requirement for adequate health. The LBPL and UBPL are derived using the FPL as a base, but also include a non-food component. Those living under the LBPL do not have enough money to buy sufficient food and non-food items, so they have to sacrifice food in order to purchase non-food items. Meanwhile, those living at UBPL can afford to buy both the minimum amount of food and non-food items. Analysis in this report (especially Chapters 3 and 4) will primarily focus on the LBPL as that is the official line used for poverty targets in the National Development Plan.

The story of poverty in South Africa is mixed. While there has been progress in decreasing the poverty headcount over the last two decades, the pace of that progress remains slow. In 2006, the poverty headcount using the LBPL stood at 57,5% (approximately 27,3 million people) which declined to 37,9% (roughly 23,2 million people) by 2023. This 19,6 percentage point drop in the headcount over a 17-year period translates to a roughly 1,15 percentage point drop per annum. Overall, there are 4,1 million fewer people living below the LBPL in 2023 than there were in 2006.

In 2006, the poverty headcount using the FPL stood at 27,4% (approximately 13,0 million people) which declined to 17,6% (roughly 10,8 million people) by 2023. This 9,8 percentage point drop in the headcount over a 17-year period translates to a roughly 0,58 percentage point drop per annum; roughly half the rate of change measured at the LBPL level. Overall, there are about 2,2 million fewer people living in food poverty in 2023 compared to 2006 levels.

Table 2.1.1: Poverty headcounts and the number of poor persons (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

Poverty headcounts	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
Percentage of the population that is UBPL poor	78,7%	76,2%	71,0%	71,1%	66,7%
Number of UBPL poor persons (in millions)	37,3	38,2	36,7	39,1	40,8
Percentage of the population that is LBPL poor	57,5%	55,7%	45,8%	46,7%	37,9%
Number of LBPL poor persons (in millions)	27,3	27,9	23,7	25,7	23,2
Percentage of the population living in extreme poverty (below FPL)	27,4%	31,7%	20,8%	22,4%	17,6%
Number of extremely poor persons (in millions)	13,0	15,9	10,8	12,3	10,8

The trend observed using the LBPL is very similar to the one seen when using the UBPL; however, while the poverty headcount fell from 78,7% in 2006 to 66,7% in 2023, the number of people living in poverty based on the UBPL actually increased over that period from 37,3 million poor persons in 2006 to 40,8 million in 2023 (roughly 3,5 million more people). It is important to remember that the population is not a fixed value. Every year the population size changes due to natural population growth (births and deaths) and net-migration. Although the total number of people living below the UBPL increased to a series peak value in 2023, the total number of non-poor individuals in 2023 is also the highest it has ever been in SA. Figures 2.1.1 to 2.1.4 below show the total number of poor and non-poor persons based on each of the three national poverty lines.

Figure 2.1.1: The number of poor and non-poor persons in South Africa (in thousands) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

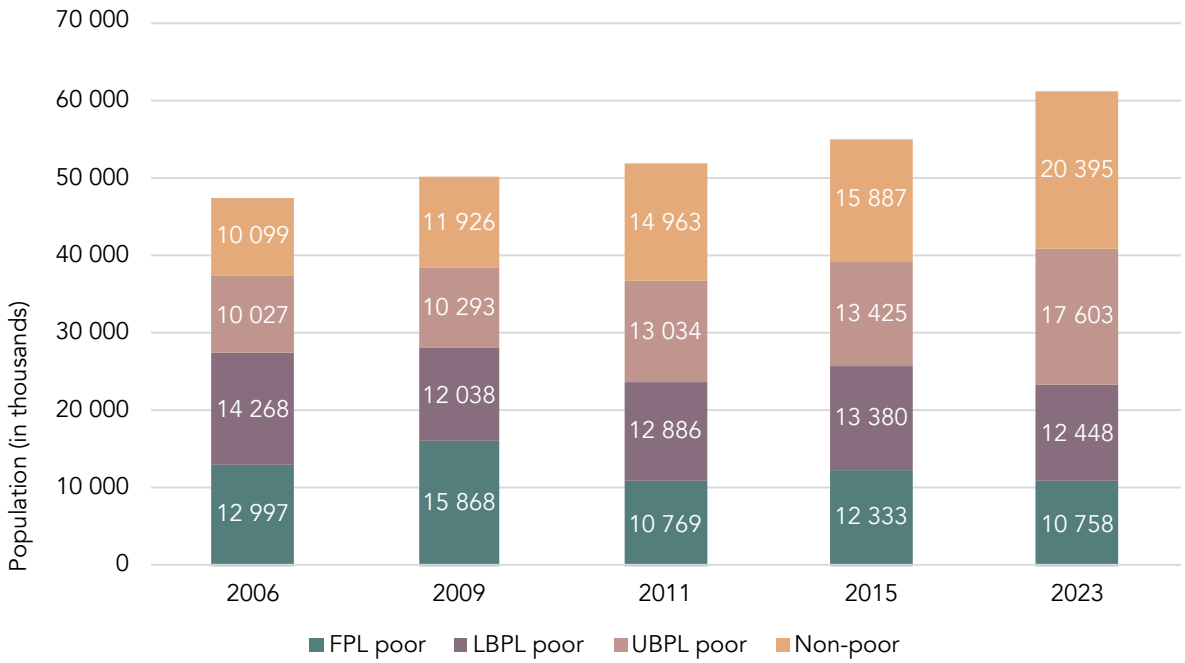


Figure 2.1.2: The number of poor and non-poor persons in South Africa based on the FPL (in thousands) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

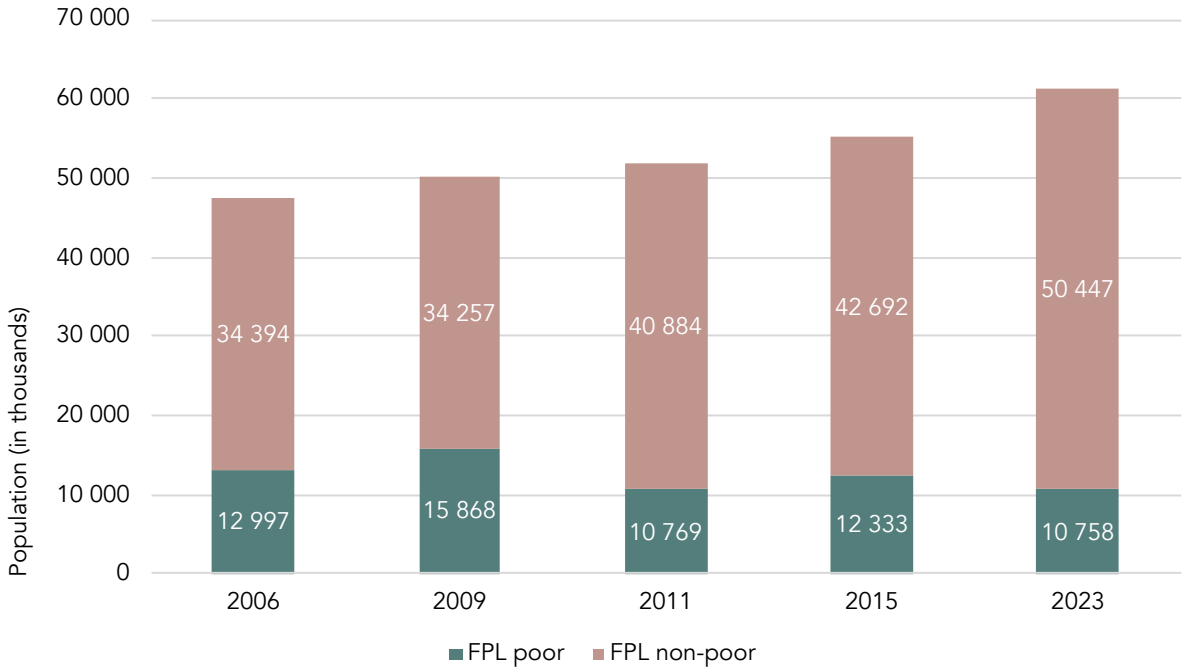


Figure 2.1.3: The number of poor and non-poor persons in South Africa based on the LBPL (in thousands) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

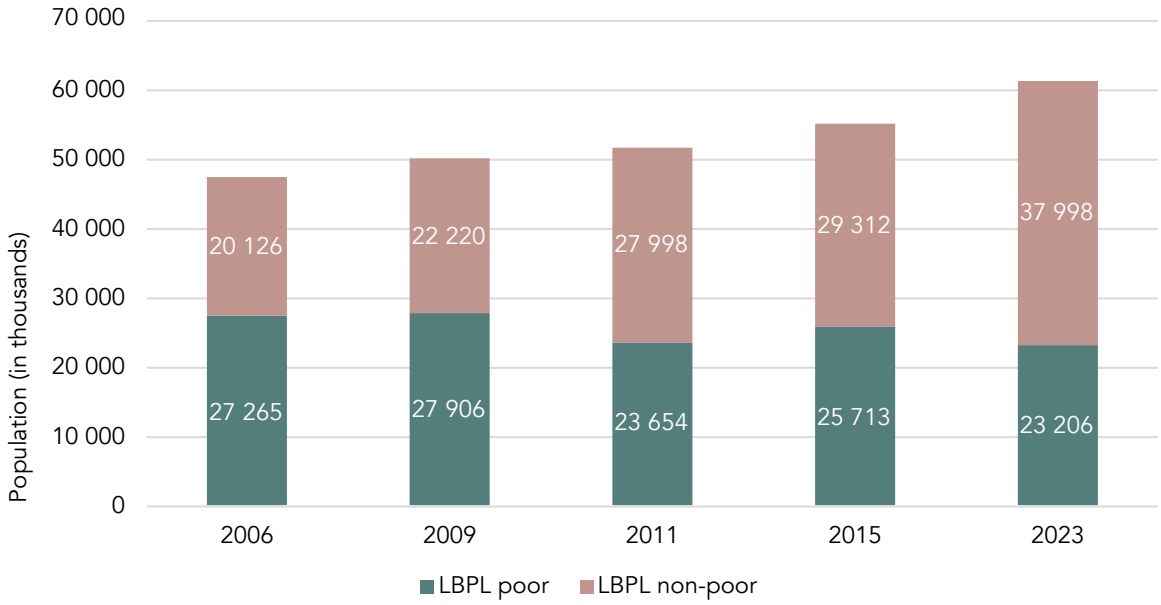
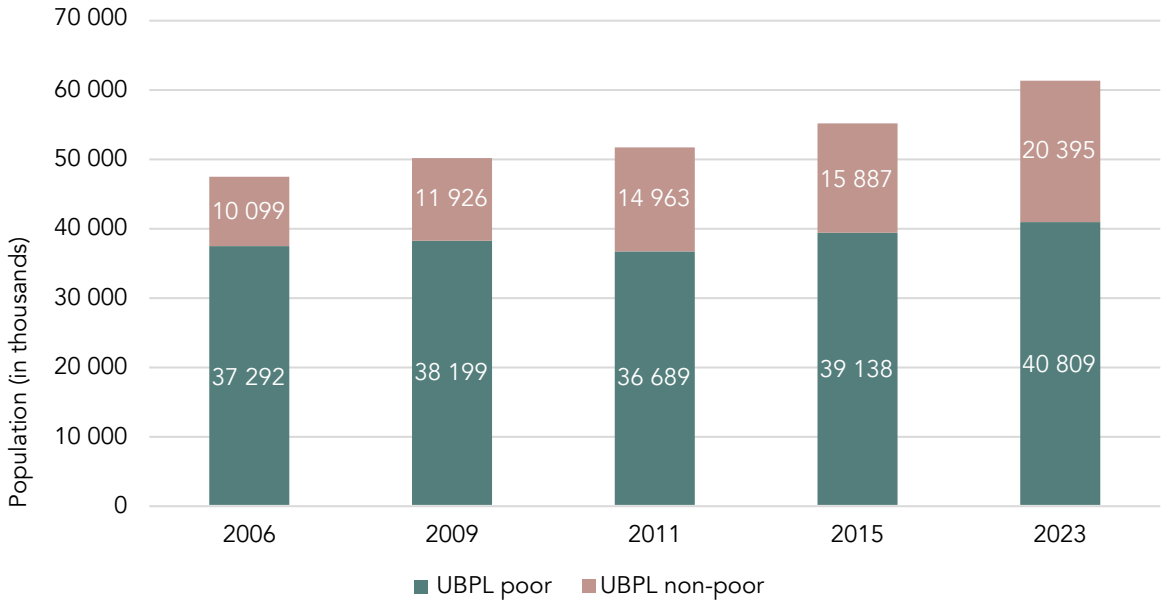
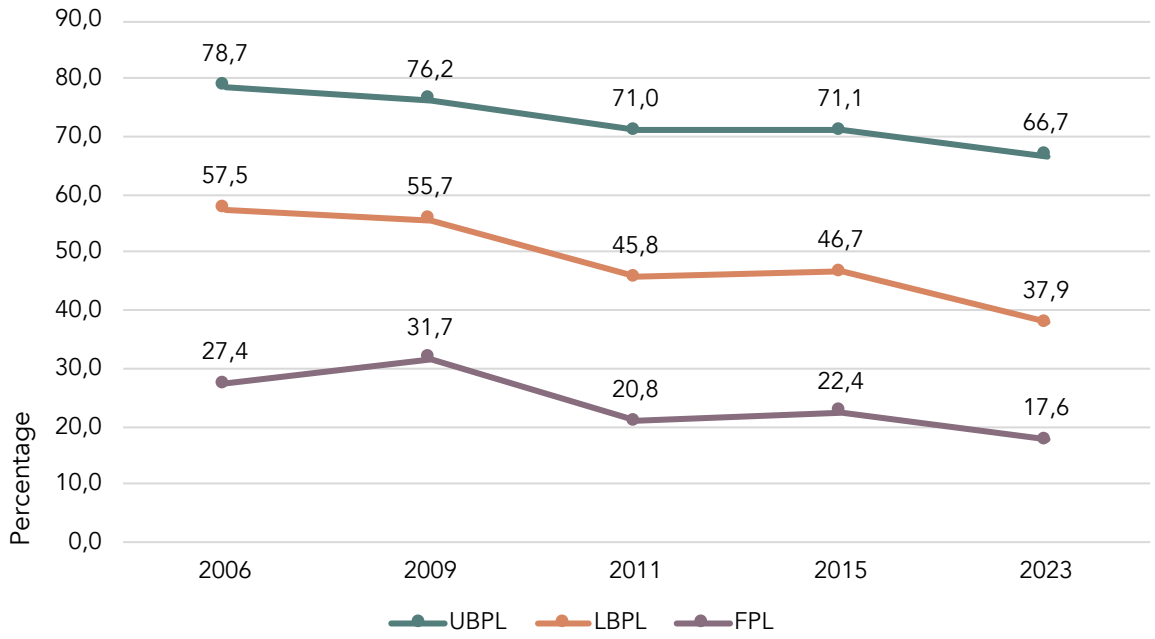


Figure 2.1.4: The number of poor and non-poor persons in South Africa based on the UBPL (in thousands) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)



Unlike the trends observed when applying the LBPL and UBPL which showed a general decline in poverty levels between 2006 and 2011, followed by a slight rise between 2011 and 2015, and then a notable decline between 2015 and 2023, the trend seen when applying the FPL shows a zig-zag pattern. Contrasting the constant decline measured between 2006 and 2011 when using the LBPL and UBPL, the FPL experienced a notable increase in 2009. This jump in food poverty reflects the impact of the 2008 global financial crisis had on the people at the lower end of the economic spectrum. However, except for the 2009 deviation, the general pattern across all three NPLs is consistent, telling the story of slow, but gradual improvement.

Figure 2.1.5: Poverty headcounts based on the FPL, LBPL and UBPL (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)



Over the last decade, notably between 2015 and 2023, South Africa has experienced a rough economic rollercoaster, driven by a combination of international and domestic factors. Obviously, the COVID-19 pandemic severely disrupted the local economy and the global supply chains we depend on, putting even more pressure on the country's already low and anaemic pattern of economic growth. Furthermore, the labour market during that period continued to suffer with high and persistent unemployment levels and this remains the case. Although the impact of the pandemic was very negative for the economy, one of government's responses to the crisis was the introduction of a special social relief of distress (SRD) grant which helped blunt the financial impact of pandemic on many South African households. Without the SRD grant – in addition to government's existing grant system and social wage policies that aim to improve the lives of the poor and reduce their cost of living – it is very likely that poverty levels could have increased over this period.

While poverty headcounts are a relatively easy measure of deprivation to conceptualise and interpret, it does not offer insight into the depth of poverty (i.e. how far away the poor are from the poverty line). For example, the situation of those who are already classified as being poor could worsen without any change in the headcount being observed. Thus, to gauge the extent of poverty among the poor, we need to turn to other key poverty measures, such as the poverty gap and the severity of poverty. The poverty gap measures the average distance of the population from the poverty line and is expressed as a percentage of the poverty line. Two countries might have similar poverty headcounts, but if their poverty gaps are significantly different, then the resources required to help the poor escape poverty are not equal.

Table 2.1.2: Poverty gaps (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

Poverty gaps	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
Poverty gap for the FPL	8,9%	11,3%	6,6%	7,5%	5,1%
Poverty gap for the LBPL	27,0%	27,1%	19,7%	20,3%	14,4%
Poverty gap for the UBPL	51,8%	49,3%	42,1%	42,3%	35,0%

Between 2015 and 2023, the poverty gaps for all three NPLs showed a decline. This means that in addition to reducing the proportion of poor individuals over this period (as seen in Figure 2.1.5 earlier), those who remain poor are on average closer to graduating out of poverty in 2023 relative to where they were in 2015.

Table 2.1.3: Severity of poverty (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

Severity of poverty	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
Severity of poverty for the FPL	4,0	5,4	2,9	3,5	2,2
Severity of poverty for the LBPL	15,6	16,1	10,8	11,2	7,3
Severity of poverty for the UBPL	37,7	35,9	28,9	28,9	21,9

The severity of poverty is a similar measure to the poverty gap, but it gives additional weight to the poorest of the poor. Just as the poverty gap has been reduced between 2015 and 2023, the severity of poverty has also contracted to its lowest points since the series started in 2006. In 2023, the severity of poverty for the FPL dropped to 2,2 (from a peak of 5,4 in 2009 and from 3,5 in 2015), while the severity for the LBPL declined to 7,3 (from a peak of 16,1 in 2009 and from 11,2 in 2015) and to 21,9 for the UBPL (down from 28,9 in 2015 and its peak of 37,7 in 2006). Thus, the situation of the poorest of the poor, while still dire, are also finding themselves moving closer to the poverty line.

While a detailed analysis of individual poverty will be explored further in Chapter 3 of the report, a brief summary of the profile of poverty will be outlined here. Poverty in 2023 follows several similar patterns observed in previous data points of the money-metric poverty series, but there are also some interesting new trends emerging. While important progress continues to be made in reducing the poverty headcount for the black African and coloured populations, poverty rates among whites and Indians/Asians have increased in 2023; however, their share of poverty still remains relative tiny as compared to black Africans who carry a larger share of poverty relative to their population size. The disparity between the sexes has remained mostly the same since 2006 with men recording lower headcounts and a lower share of poverty than their female counterparts. Younger populations, especially children, are still more likely to be poor than older persons. More than half of the poor population in South Africa is under the age of 24, with children aged 0 to 17 years representing the lion's share of that amount.

Education remains one of the most potent tools for fighting poverty, as those with lower education levels recorded notably higher poverty headcounts compared to those with higher levels of education. However, while there is a strong association between one's education level and poverty status, roughly a quarter of the poor population aged 18 and above have completed matric. KwaZulu-Natal, Eastern Cape, North West and Limpopo are the poorest provinces in the country, reporting the highest poverty headcounts regardless of the line used. Roughly 60% of all poor persons reside in one of those four provinces, with KZN alone home to approximately one out of every four poor persons in South Africa. While Gauteng recorded the second lowest headcount after Western Cape in 2023 and has seen its poverty levels drop moderately over time based on the LBPL and UBPL, Gauteng's poverty share has increased notably since 2015, with roughly one out of every five poor persons in South Africa residing there in 2023.

People living in large households (those with 6 or more members) and those living in rural areas are also more likely to be poor compared to persons from smaller households or households living in urban areas. While rural areas accounted for a larger share of the poor population between 2006 and 2015, in 2023 there are now more poor persons living in urban areas compared to rural areas based on the LBPL. However, this pattern changes depending on which line you use. Persons living in rural areas make up a larger share of the poor population based on the FPL, but at the UBPL level, urban dwellers account for a greater share of the poor population.

While the pattern of poverty remains mostly similar between individual and household poverty (although, household-based estimates are generally lower), there are some unique trends that show up when analysing household poverty that aren't as apparent at an individual level. These household poverty estimates will be unpacked in Chapter 4 of the report.

2.2 – Progress towards NDP targets

The National Development Plan is a strategic framework for addressing the socioeconomic and developmental challenges confronting South Africa. The overarching goal of this plan is to eliminate poverty and reduce inequality in the country by 2030. It was compiled by the National Planning Commission (NPC) which was established in 2010 with the mandate to:

> *"Take a broad, cross-cutting, independent and critical view of South Africa, to help define the South Africa we seek to achieve in 20 years' time and to map out a path to achieve those objectives. The commission is expected to put forward solid research, sound evidence and clear recommendations for government" (NPC 2010)*

To fulfil this mandate, the NPC released a diagnostic analysis in June 2011 that highlighted the main challenges facing the country. Following extensive consultative processes, the NDP was finalised and formally adopted by government in 2012.

The NDP has a number of wide-ranging targets that are broader than the scope of IES and LCS data; thus, this report will focus on the primary poverty and inequality indicators outlined in the NDP, namely:

- Reduce the proportion of population with income below the lower-bound poverty line from 39 per cent (in 2009) to zero by 2030;
- Reduce income inequality from 0,7 in 2010 to 0,6 by 2030;
- The share of income going to the bottom 40 per cent of income earners rises from 6 per cent to 10 per cent; and
- Reduce poverty-induced hunger to 0% by 2030.

With the rebasing of the NPLs using the latest expenditure information sourced from the IES 2022/23, as well as the other changes noted in Section 1.5, the poverty series has been revised and thus, the 2011 baseline values and other data points will have different values than previously reported in the PTR 2017.

Table 2.2.1: NDP poverty and inequality-related targets

NDP target	Revised baseline	2030 target	Latest estimate
Reducing the proportion of persons living below the lower-bound poverty line from 39 per cent (in 2009) to zero by 2030	45,8% (2011)	0%	37,9% (2023)
Reduce income inequality from 0,7 in 2010 to 0,6 by 2030	0,678 (2011)	0,60	0,635 (2023)
The share of income going to the bottom 40 per cent of income earners should rise from 6 per cent to 10 per cent	4,5% (2011)	10,0%	6,8% (2023)
Reduce poverty-induced hunger to 0% by 2030	20,8% (2011)	0%	17,6% (2023)

Note: The estimates for share of income going to the bottom 40% were sourced from the IES 2022/23 statistical release (P0100) published in January 2025.

2.2.1 NDP target: Reduce the proportion of population living below the lower-bound poverty line (LBPL) from 39 per cent (in 2009) to zero by 2030

When the NDP was initially compiled, it used preliminary poverty estimates sourced from the LCS 2008/09 as a baseline for its primary poverty target. Specifically, the NDP set the target of reducing the proportion of persons living below the lower-bound poverty line from 39 per cent (in 2009) to zero by 2030. Given that the final NDP was published in 2012 by the NPC, the default baselines for its targets should technically be linked to 2012 (or its nearest estimate). In the case of the money-metric poverty series, the 2011 poverty estimates derived from the IES 2010/11 are the most suitable baseline estimates for NDP reporting. The NDP was unable to utilise the 2011 estimates originally as these were only published in 2014 with the release of the first PTR (hence why the NDP had to use preliminary estimates based on 2009). Thus, for analysis on the progress towards achieving the NDP targets, the headline poverty target should actually be updated to say "reduce the proportion of persons living below the lower-bound poverty line (R656 per person per month in 2011 prices) from 45,8 per cent (in 2011) to zero by 2030".

According to the results of the IES 2022/23, approximately 37,9% of the population (roughly 23,2 million people) were living below the LBPL in 2023; this was a decrease of 7,9 percentage points from 45,8% in 2011. In order for South Africa to achieve its zero target by 2030, the proportion of people living below the LBPL needs to decrease by 5,4 percentage points on average per annum between 2024 and 2030.

Figure 2.2.1.1: Proportion of population living below the lower-bound poverty line (LBPL) by sex (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

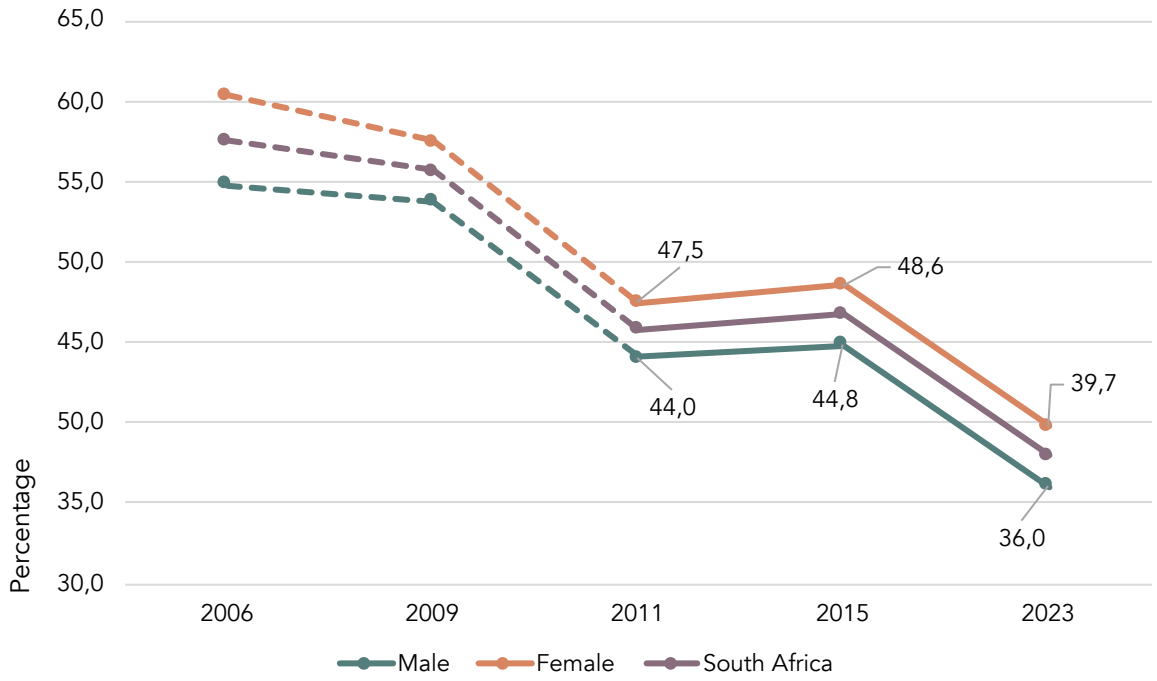


Figure 2.2.1.1 shows that the proportion of females living below the LBPL in 2011 was 47,5% which decreased to 39,7% by 2023 (a 7,8 percentage point drop). The poverty headcount for males also decreased by roughly the same margin over this period from 44,0% in 2011 to 36,0% in 2023 (a decline of 8,0 percentage points). Unfortunately, the gap between males and females slightly increased between 2011 and 2023 from 3,5% (47,5% vs 44,0%) to 3,7% (39,7% vs 36,0%); however, this is a notable improvement relative to the 5,6% gap between the sexes measured in 2006 (60,3% vs 54,7%).

Figure 2.2.1.2: Proportion of population living below the lower-bound poverty line (LBPL) by province (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

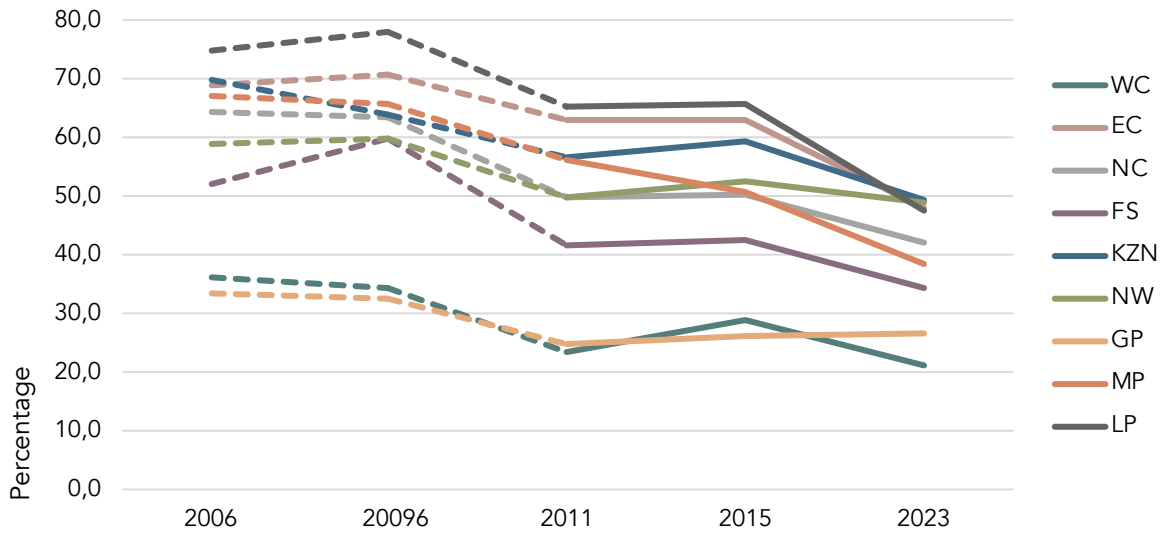


Table 2.2.1.1: Poverty headcount by province (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

Province	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
Western Cape	36,5	34,4	23,7	29,2	21,4
Eastern Cape	69,2	70,9	63,3	63,1	48,2
Northern Cape	64,6	63,4	50,0	50,6	42,3
Free State	52,2	60,1	41,6	42,4	34,4
Kwazulu-Natal	69,9	64,2	56,9	59,6	49,6
North West	59,1	59,7	49,9	52,8	49,1
Gauteng	33,7	32,9	24,7	26,3	26,5
Mpumalanga	67,0	65,8	56,3	51,1	38,4
Limpopo	75,1	78,3	65,5	66,0	47,6
South Africa	**57,5**	**55,7**	**45,8**	**46,7**	**37,9**

Figure 2.2.1.2 and Table 2.2.1.1 show that Kwazulu-Natal was the poorest province in 2023 with a headcount of 49,6%, followed by North West (49,1%), Eastern Cape (48,2%), and Limpopo (47,6%). Western Cape and Gauteng had the lowest headcounts in 2023 at 21,4% and 26,5%, respectively. Limpopo and Mpumalanga reported the largest decline in poverty between 2011 and 2023, both dropping by 17,9 percentage points, followed by a 15,1 percentage point reduction in Eastern Cape. Gauteng was the only province that reported a higher poverty headcount in 2023 compared to its 2011 level, rising from 24,7% to 26,5%.

2.2.2 NDP target: Reduce the income inequality (Gini coefficient) from 0,7 in 2010 to 0,6 by 2030

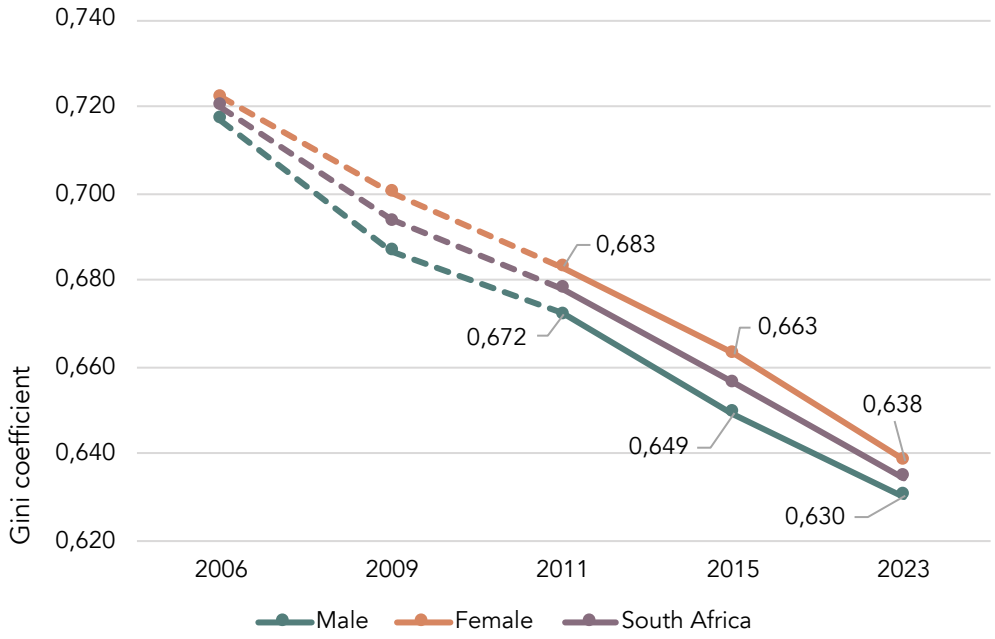
The Gini coefficient is one of the most well-known inequality measures used to estimate inequality in a country and was used in the NDP to track progress in reducing inequality levels in South Africa. The Gini ranges from 0 to 1, where 0 indicates perfect equality (all individuals have the same income) and 1 indicates perfect inequality (where one person has all the income and the rest have none). Therefore, the closer the Gini coefficient gets to 1, the more unequal the population is; while, on the other hand, as the Gini coefficient approaches 0, the more equal the population becomes. The Gini can be derived using either income or expenditure data. For NDP progress reporting, the Gini estimates are based on income per capita (including salaries, wages and social grants) as shown in Table 2.2.2.1. However, for comparison purposes, corresponding Gini information based on expenditure per capita (excluding taxes) is shown later in Table 2.2.2.2.

Table 2.2.2.1: Gini coefficients based on income per capita by sex, population group and province (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

Year	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**0,720**	**0,694**	**0,678**	**0,656**	**0,635**
Sex					
Male	0,717	0,687	0,672	0,649	0,630
Female	0,722	0,700	0,683	0,663	0,638
Population group					
Black African	0,607	0,640	0,620	0,613	0,567
Coloured	0,589	0,565	0,575	0,554	0,545
Indian/Asian	0,556	0,502	0,503	0,521	0,510
White	0,491	0,454	0,435	0,443	0,468
Province					
Western Cape	0,699	0,625	0,617	0,618	0,634
Eastern Cape	0,692	0,681	0,684	0,660	0,603
Northern Cape	0,656	0,667	0,631	0,635	0,608
Free State	0,685	0,674	0,648	0,619	0,570
KwaZulu-Natal	0,712	0,687	0,672	0,645	0,604
North West	0,685	0,645	0,707	0,611	0,599
Gauteng	0,684	0,664	0,627	0,623	0,628
Mpumalanga	0,695	0,657	0,668	0,625	0,541
Limpopo	0,626	0,628	0,650	0,650	0,573

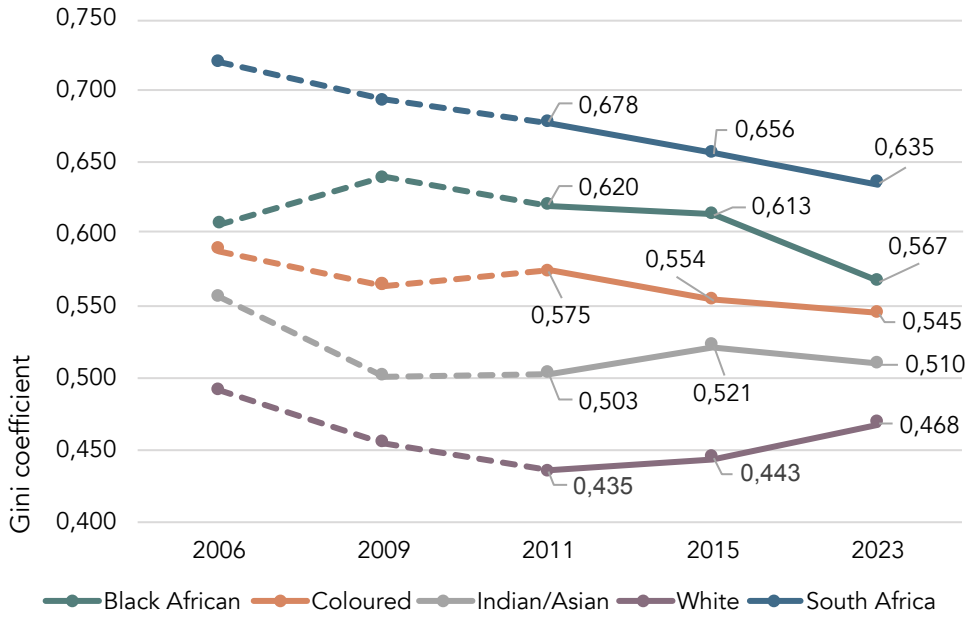
According to Table 2.2.2.1, the national Gini coefficient dropped from 0,720 in 2006 to a series low of 0,635 in 2023. Over the NDP reporting period, the Gini index declined by 0,043 from 0,678 in 2011 to 0,635 in 2023. While inequality levels have improved, the pace of change is relatively slow and would likely need to increase to allow the country to reach its target of 0,60 by 2030. Nevertheless, we see more significant progress with regard to the NDP's inequality reduction ambitions than we see on the poverty front.

Figure 2.2.2.1: Gini coefficients based on income per capita by sex (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)



According to Figure 2.2.2.1, the Gini coefficients for both males and females dropped between 2011 and 2023 and the gap between the sexes has remained roughly consistent at around 0,01. In 2011, the Gini for females was estimated at 0,683 while for males it was 0,672. These estimates both decreased by approximately 0,02 between 2011 and 2015, with females dropping to 0,663 and males to 0,649. By 2023, the Gini coefficient had further declined to 0,638 for females and 0,630 for males.

Figure 2.2.2.2: Gini coefficients based on income per capita by population group (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)



According to Figure 2.2.2.2, progress in reducing the Gini by population group shows mixed results. While the Gini estimates for black Africans and coloureds declined between 2011 and 2023, the estimates for Indians/Asians and whites increased over the same period. Black Africans saw a notable drop in their Gini from 0,620 in 2011 to 0,567 in 2023 (a decrease of 0,053). The decline for coloureds was less pronounced decreasing from 0,575 in 2011 to 0,545 in 2023 (a drop of 0,03). The Gini estimates for Indians/Asians increased from 0,503 in 2011 to 0,510 in 2023; however, between 2015 and 2023, their Gini actually dropped from 0,521 to 0,510. The white population recorded a Gini estimate of 0,435 in 2011, increasing to 0,443 in 2015, followed by another increase to 0,468 in 2023. The increasing level of inequality amongst the Indian/Asian and white populations parallels their rising level of poverty observed between 2015 and 2023.

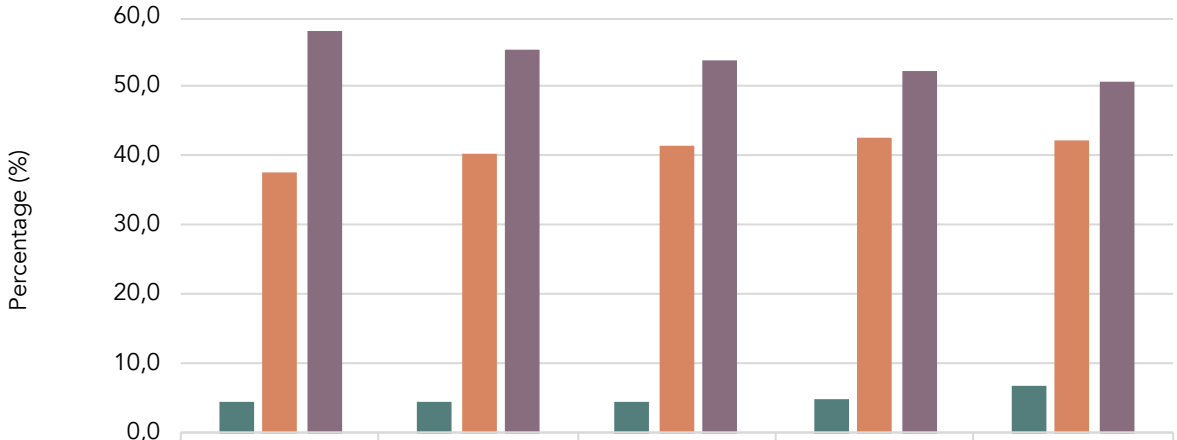
Table 2.2.2.2: Gini coefficients based on expenditure per capita by sex, population group and province (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

Year	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**0,650**	**0,625**	**0,609**	**0,596**	**0,541**
Sex					
Male	0,645	0,618	0,602	0,591	0,535
Female	0,654	0,632	0,615	0,601	0,545
Population group					
Black African	0,512	0,530	0,518	0,514	0,478
Coloured	0,518	0,490	0,493	0,497	0,446
Indian/Asian	0,473	0,449	0,413	0,407	0,388
White	0,393	0,358	0,354	0,355	0,366
Province					
Western Cape	0,641	0,585	0,553	0,570	0,541
Eastern Cape	0,602	0,601	0,574	0,597	0,503
Northern Cape	0,573	0,579	0,561	0,553	0,514
Free State	0,608	0,576	0,543	0,559	0,497
KwaZulu-Natal	0,639	0,593	0,603	0,568	0,535
North West	0,628	0,583	0,617	0,557	0,530
Gauteng	0,611	0,585	0,575	0,563	0,524
Mpumalanga	0,616	0,589	0,581	0,559	0,471
Limpopo	0,548	0,564	0,549	0,560	0,461

2.2.3 NDP target: The share of income going to the bottom 40% of income earners should rise from 6 per cent to 10 per cent by 2030

Figure 2.2.3.1 shows the distribution of per capita income shares between 2006 and 2023. The bottom 40% of income earners have seen their income share increase from 4,4% in 2006 to 6,8% in 2023. Over the NDP reporting period, the share going to the bottom 40% increased from 4,5% in 2011 to 6,8% in 2023, representing a 2,3 percentage point increase in their share since 2011. Despite the increasing share of income going to the bottom 40% over recent years, the bulk of income is still concentrated with those at the top of the income ladder. While the share of income going to the top 10% of income earners has decreased by 7,1 percentage points between 2006 (57,9%) and 2023 (50,8%), their income share still accounted for more than half of all total household income in the country.

Figure 2.2.3.1: The distribution of per capita income shares (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)



	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
Bottom 40%	4,4	4,4	4,5	5,0	6,8
Middle 50%	37,7	40,5	41,6	42,6	42,4
Top 10%	57,9	55,2	53,9	52,4	50,8

Source: IES 2022/23 Statistical Release (P0100), Stats SA

2.2.4 NDP target: Reduce poverty-induced hunger to 0% by 2030

Food insecurity happens when people do not have sustainable physical or economic access to enough nutritious food for a healthy and productive life. Malnutrition causes high rates of diseases and mortality, and also limits the development of children. Low energy intakes can reduce productivity, creating a malicious cycle in which poor workers are unable to make enough income to obtain adequate calories to be productive. Thus, hunger can constrain the country's ability to develop economically and can cause social and political instability. One of the NDP's targets for 2030 is for South Africa to reduce poverty-induced hunger to 0%. This essentially means reducing the proportion of people living below the FPL to zero by 2030. The FPL is the level of consumption below which individuals are unable to obtain enough food to provide them with a sufficient diet for healthy development

Figure 2.2.4.1 below shows the proportion of the population living below the FPL by sex. Similar to trends observed in Section 2.2.1 when using the LBPL, females recorded higher food poverty headcounts than their male counterparts. Between 2011 and 2023, the food poverty headcount for females decreased by 3,2 percentage points from 21,9% in 2011 to 18,7% in 2023. Male headcount rates over that period decreased by roughly the same proportion (3,3 percentage points) from 19,7% in 2011 to 16,4% in 2023.

Figure 2.2.4.1: Proportion of population living below the food poverty line (FPL) by sex (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

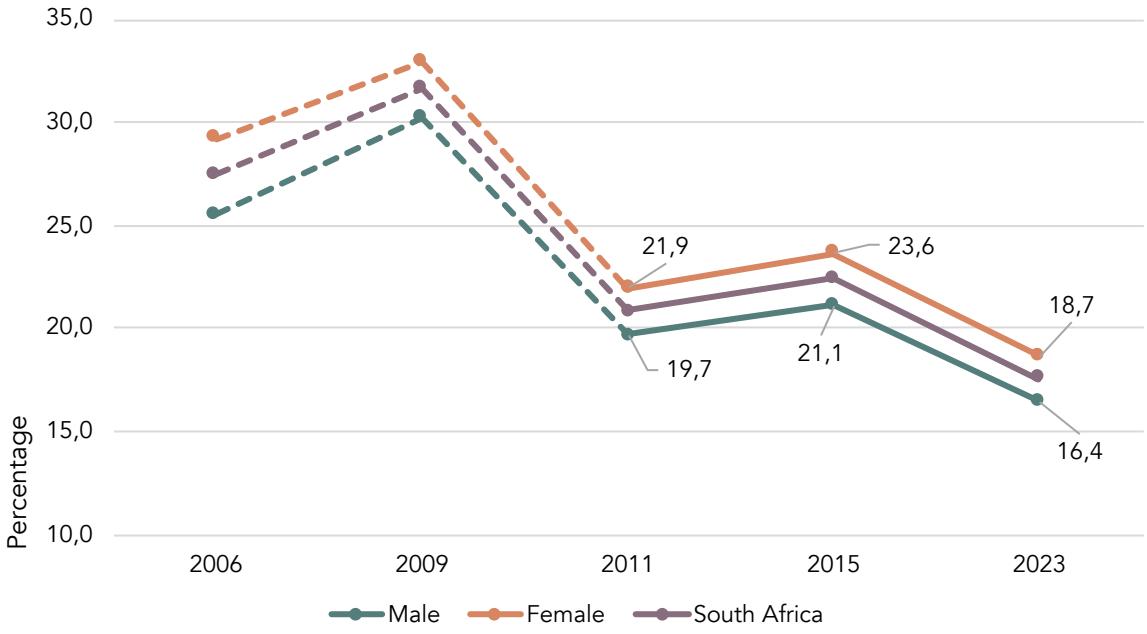


Figure 2.2.4.2 shows the proportion of the population living below the FPL by population group. Similar to the LBPL trend, we observe improvements amongst the black African and coloured populations, while the Indian/Asian and white populations saw their headcounts slightly increase between 2011 and 2023. Black Africans saw their FPL headcount decrease by 4,5 percentage points from 25,3% in 2011 to 20,8% in 2023; although, their headcount increased to 22,4% in 2015, so the 6,0 percentage point decline between 2015 and 2023 was larger than the decline measured between 2011 and 2023. A similar pattern is observed for the coloured population which had a headcount of 8,6% in 2011, which increased to 11,7% in 2015, before dropping to 7,8% in 2023. Thus, they also saw a significant improvement between 2015 and 2023 (a drop of 3,9 percentage points) relative to the change between 2011 and 2023 (a drop of 0,8 percentage points).

Although the headcount for the white population technically increased between 2011 and 2023, the scale of that increase was tiny (almost flat) relative to the larger increase observed when using the LBPL. Meanwhile, Indians/Asians saw their headcount increase by 0,7 percentage points from 0,5% in 2011 to 1,2% in 2023.

Figure 2.2.4.2: Proportion of population living below the food poverty line (FPL) by population group (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

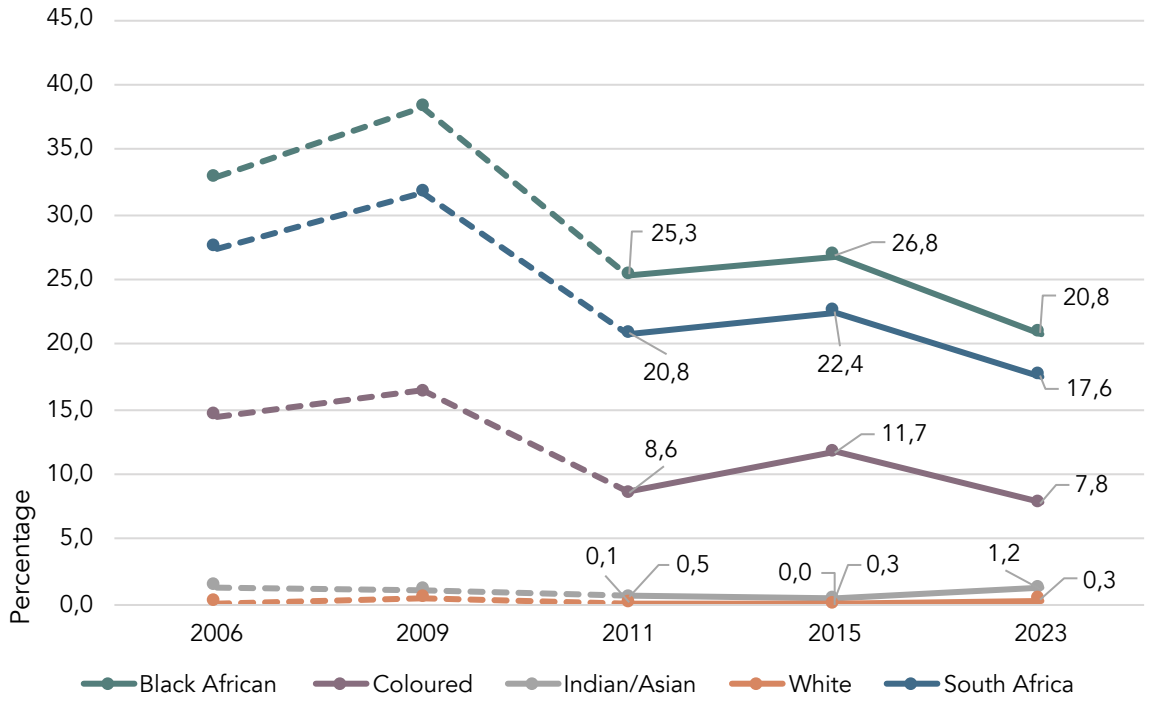


Figure 2.2.4.3 and Table 2.2.4.1 below show the proportion of the population living below the FPL by province. KwaZulu-Natal and North West shared the highest headcount in 2023 with more than one out of every four individuals (27,3%) in those two provinces being food poor, followed by Eastern Cape (22,9%), Limpopo (20,8%), and Northern Cape (18,8%). The provinces that recorded the largest improvements in their FPL headcounts between 2011 and 2023 were Limpopo, Mpumalanga, and Eastern Cape. Limpopo had a very sizeable 15,0 percentage point drop in food poverty, declining from 35,8% in 2011 to 20,8% in 2023. Meanwhile, Mpumalanga dropped from 24,0% to 14,3% (9,7 percentage points) and Eastern Cape declined from 32,0% to 22,9% (9,1 percentage points) over the same period.

Figure 2.2.4.3: Proportion of population living below the food poverty line (FPL) by province (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

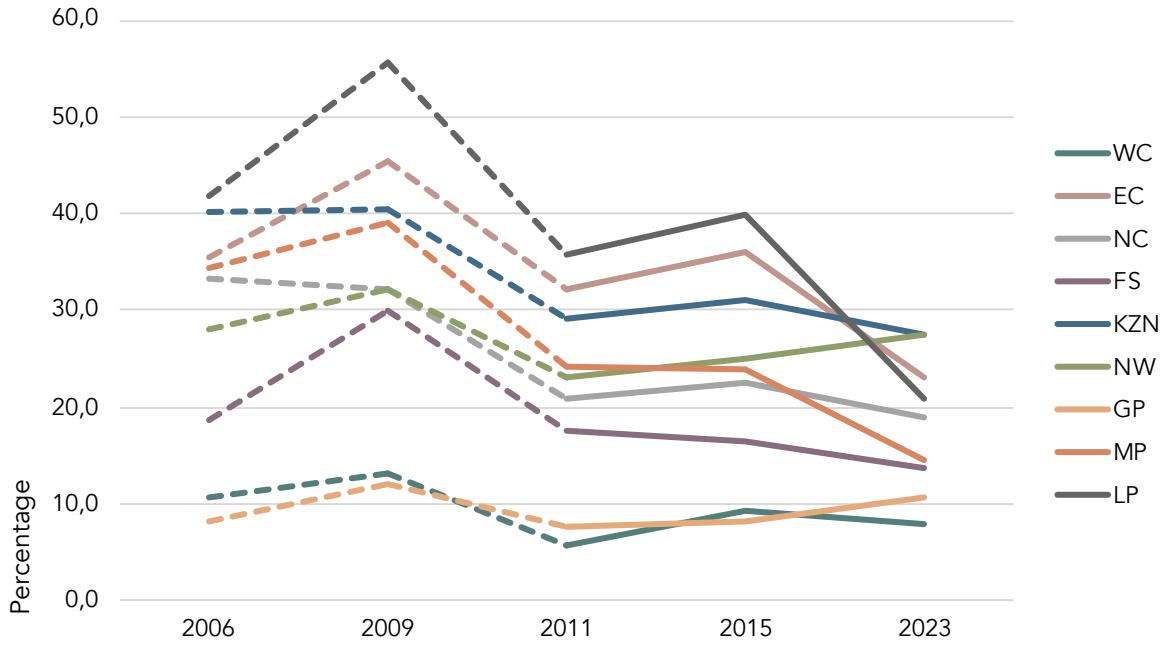


Table 2.2.4.1: Poverty headcount by province (FPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

Province	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
Western Cape	10,5	13,2	5,7	9,2	7,8
Eastern Cape	35,5	45,3	32,0	35,9	22,9
Northern Cape	33,2	32,3	20,9	22,6	18,8
Free State	18,7	29,8	17,6	16,5	13,5
Kwazulu-Natal	40,1	40,4	29,1	31,0	27,3
North West	28,0	32,1	23,1	25,1	27,3
Gauteng	8,2	11,9	7,5	8,1	10,7
Mpumalanga	34,3	39,0	24,0	23,9	14,3
Limpopo	41,7	55,6	35,8	39,9	20,8
South Africa	**27,4**	**31,7**	**20,8**	**22,4**	**17,6**

Three provinces saw their FPL headcounts increase between 2011 and 2023, namely North West, Gauteng, and Western Cape. Food poverty in North West increased by roughly 4,2 percentage points from 23,1% in 2011 to 27,3% in 2023. During the same period, Gauteng's headcount increased by 3,2 percentage points from 7,5% to 10,7%, while Western Cape increased from 5,7% to 7,8% (an increase of 2,1 percentage points). It is interesting to note that these same three provinces have actually seen very little change in their food poverty status since 2006. North West in particular stands out with only a 0,7 percentage point improvement when comparing their 2006 level against 2023.

2.3 – Economic and social conditions in the country

This section will provide a brief overview of social and economic changes that have occurred during the course of the money-metric poverty series from 2006 to 2023 with special focus on changes that happened between 2015 and 2023. Given the lengthy 8-year data gap between 2015 and 2023 poverty estimates, it will be useful to understand elements of the broader data ecosystem over that period to help readers contextualise and frame the poverty results.

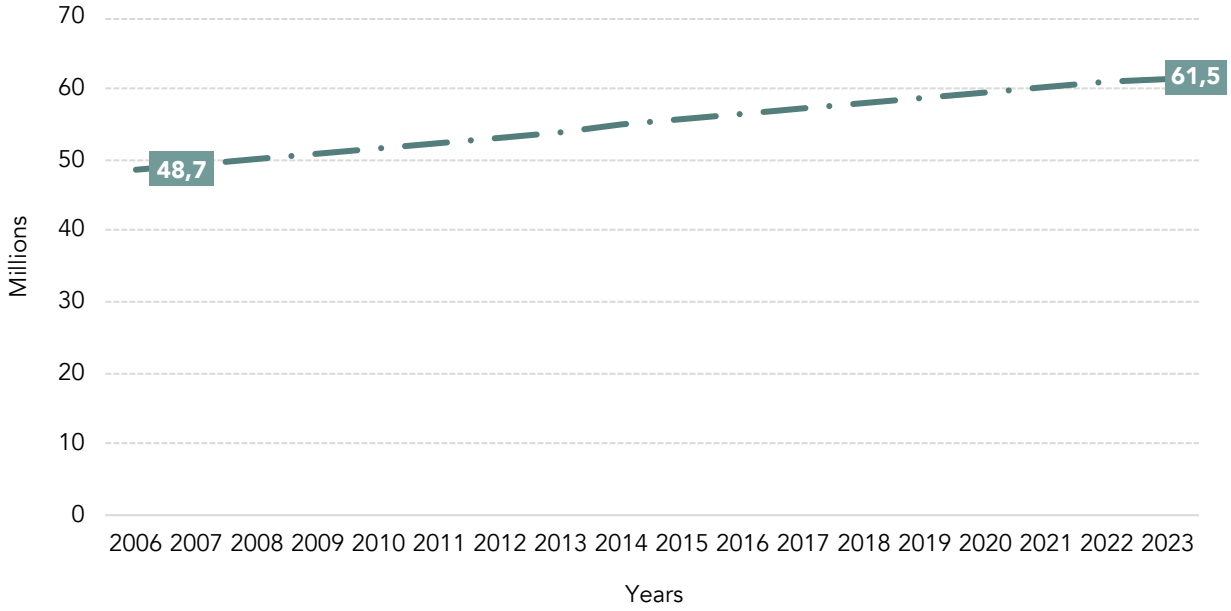
2.3.1 Population dynamics

Information on the size, distribution and characteristics of a country's population is essential for describing and assessing its economic, social and demographic circumstances and for developing sound policies and programmes. Recent census data and the mid-year population estimates (MYPE) have shown that South Africa's population reflects a country in the latter stages of the demographic transition characterized by declining fertility and mortality rates.

Based on the MYPE 2025 series, overall births are the main contributor of population growth contributing to a total growth rate of 1,29% in 2006-2007 and 1,16% between 2022-2023, respectively. The total fertility rate (TFR) was estimated at 2,77 in 2006 and has declined to 2,21 in 2023 based on MYPE 2025. The infant mortality rate (IMR) – which is often used as an indicator of development in a country – has declined from an estimated 61,8 infant deaths per 1 000 live births in 2006 to 24,3 infant deaths per 1 000 live births in 2023. Similarly, the under-five mortality rate (U5MR) declined from 79,6 child deaths per 1 000 live births to 27,4 child deaths per 1 000 live births between 2006 and 2023. Improved access to HIV prevention and treatment, along with better healthcare and living conditions, has led to a sharp decline in child mortality during the reference period. Migration on the other hand, has had a negligible impact on total population size, although it becomes increasingly important in provincial population distribution and for local government planning.

Figure 2.3.1.1 below shows that South Africa's population has grown from 48,7 million to 61,5 million between 2006 and 2023. Based on all available demographic data sources, females constitute a larger proportion of the population than males. The overwhelming majority of the population is black African (roughly 82%). Although the South African population is gradually ageing, the results overtime suggest that the population remains a youthful population with a median age of 28 years. However, this differs markedly for the white and Indian/Asian populations that are characterised by much older population age profiles.

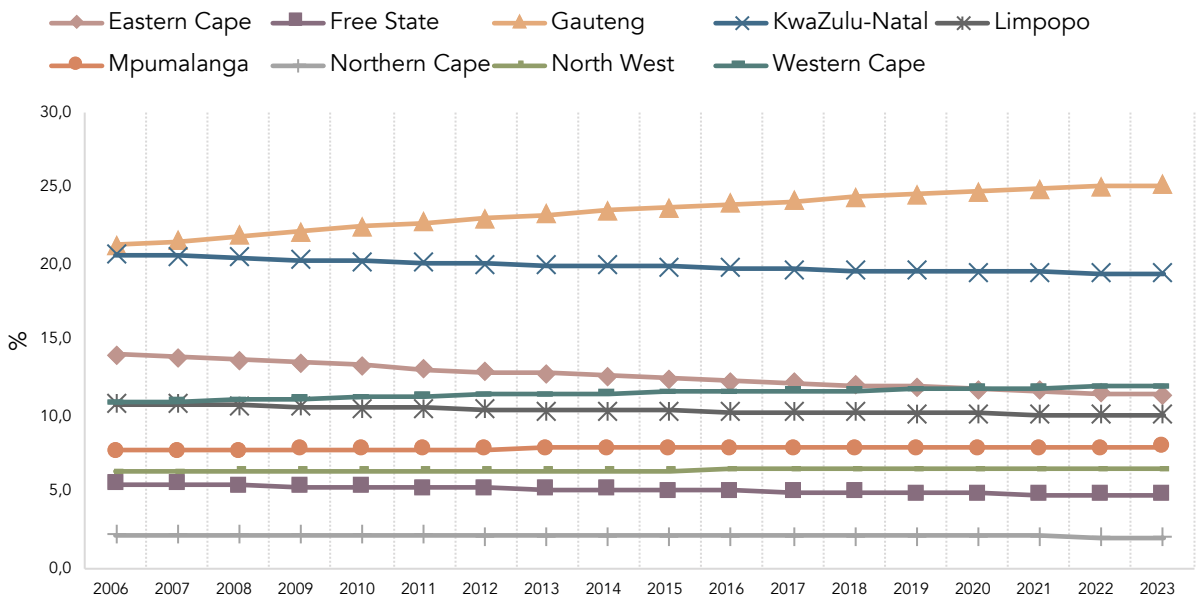
Figure 2.3.1.1: Population of South Africa over time between 2006 and 2023



Source: Mid-year Population Estimates 2025 (P0302), Stats SA

Figure 2.3.1.2 below shows the population distribution by provinces based on MYPE for 2025. For the period 2006-2023, Gauteng remained the most populated province, followed by KwaZulu-Natal. On the other end of the scale, the Northern Cape remains the least populated province.

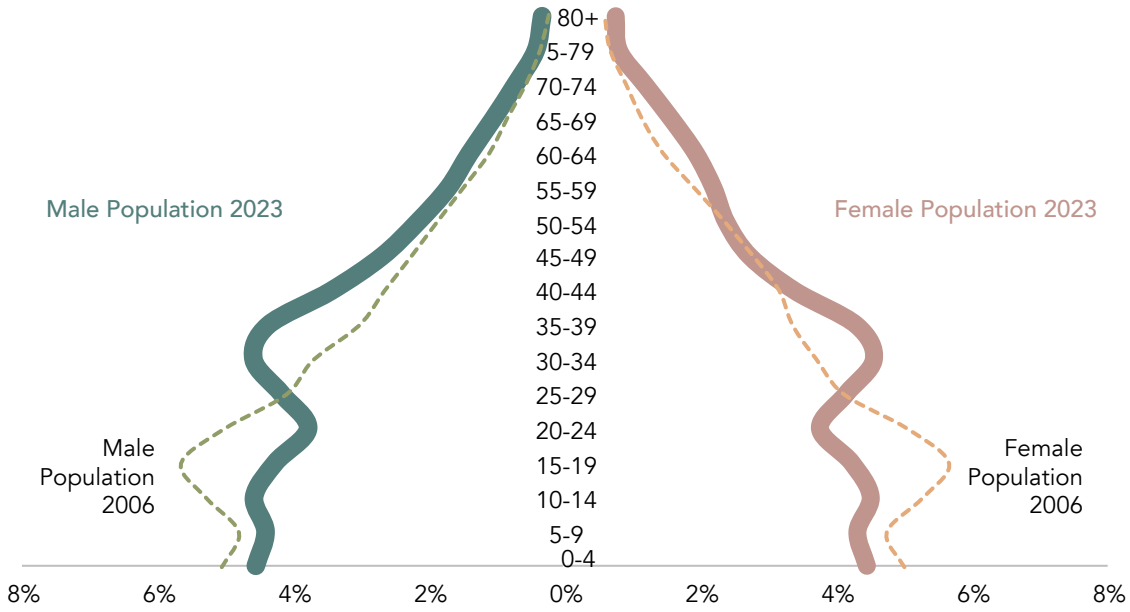
Figure 2.3.1.2: Percentage distribution of the population by province (2006-2023)



Source: Mid-year Population Estimates 2025 (P0302), Stats SA

Figure 2.3.1.3 below shows the country's age structure by 5-year age groups for the period 2006 vs 2023. Overtime, children under the age of 15 years made the majority of South Africa's population, followed by a youth bulge. While the country remains relatively young, the proportion of elderly persons is steadily rising; pointing to a gradual ageing of the population over time.

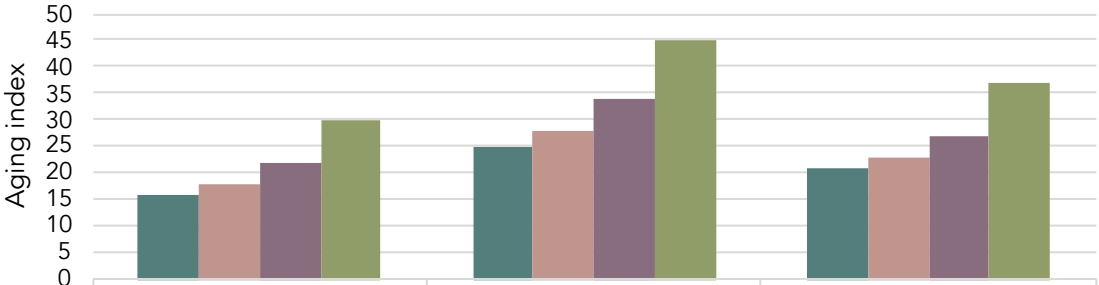
Figure 2.3.1.3: South Africa's age structure by 5-year age groups (2006 vs 2023)



Source: Mid-year Population Estimates 2025 (P0302), Stats SA

The ageing index refers to the number of people aged 60 and above per 100 persons under the age of 15 years. It reflects the shifting balance of children versus elderly in a population. Figure 2.3.1.4 shows the ageing index by census year and sex between 1996 and 2022. Results indicate that the ageing index is less than 50 across the four census years and by sex. However, the index has been increasing nationally and by sex in the reference period, with a marked increase observed between 2011 and 2022. The ageing index increased from 21 elderly persons per 100 individuals aged less than 15 years in 1996 to 37 in 2022. Females have a higher ageing index compared to males. In 2022, ageing index was 45 for females, while for males it was 30.

Figure 2.3.1.4: Ageing index by census year and sex (1996-2022)

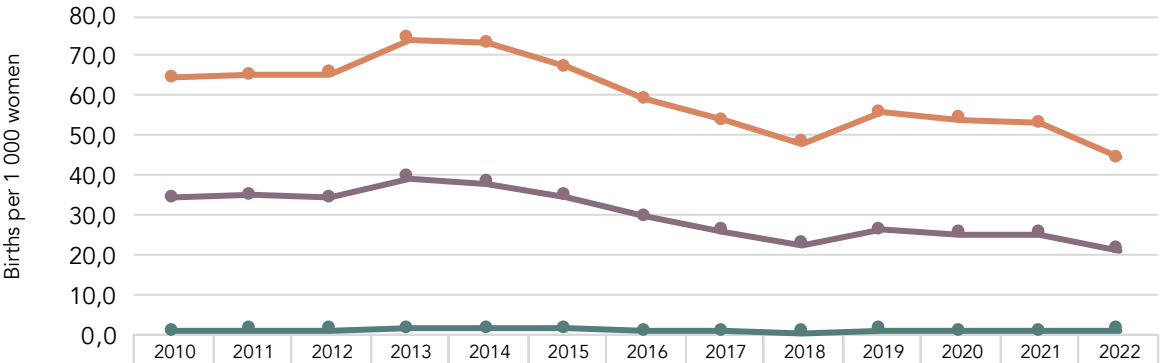


	Male	Female	Total
1996	16	25	21
2001	18	28	23
2011	22	34	27
2022	30	45	37

Source: Census 1996, 2001, 2011 and 2022, Stats SA

Adolescent birth rate (ABR) represents the annual number of births to adolescent women aged 10 to 19 years per 1000 women in that adolescent age group. Figure 2.3.1.5 presents the patterns of adolescent birth rates in South Africa between 2010 and 2022. Overall, the results show that birth rates have been decreasing in the country. Birth rates among adolescents aged 15 to 19 years were significantly higher compared with adolescents aged 10 to 14 years. Birth rates among adolescents aged 15 to 19 years decreased from 64,6 in 2010 to 59,2 in 2016 and was 44,3 (per 1 000 women) in 2022. The rate was highest in 2013 (74,3 births per 1 000 women) and lowest in 2022 (44,3 births per 1 000 women) among this age group in the study period.

Figure 2.3.1.5: Adolescent birth rates per 1 000 women in South Africa, CRVS (2010–2022)

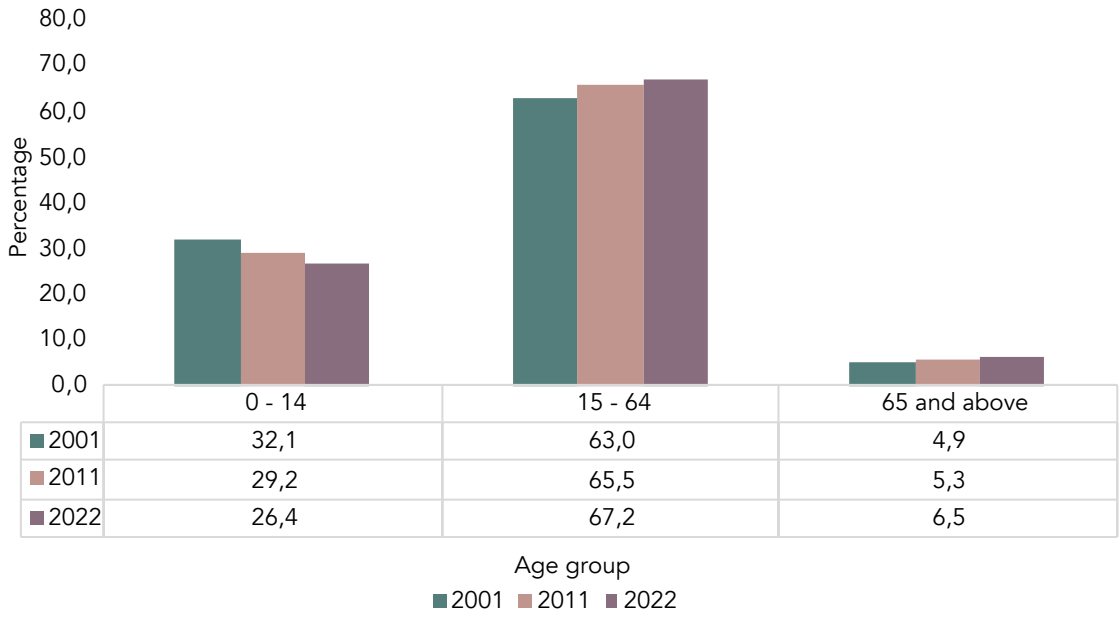


ABR	2010	2011	2012	2013	2014	2015	2016	2017	2018	2019	2020	2021	2022
10 - 14	1,3	1,4	1,6	1,9	1,6	1,8	1,2	1,0	0,9	1,5	1,2	1,3	1,4
15 - 19	64,6	65,2	65,6	74,3	73,2	67,2	59,2	53,7	48,2	55,9	54,1	53,3	44,3
10 - 19	34,6	35,0	34,6	39,4	38,2	34,6	29,6	26,2	22,9	26,4	25,5	25,3	21,6

Source: Recorded live births (P0305) 2010-2022, Stats SA

The demographic dividend is defined as the accelerated economic growth that can occur when a country's working-age population grows larger than its dependent population of children (0 to 14). This can emanate from reduced fertility rates resulting in a declining youth dependency ratio (Bloom 1998). The dependency is still recognised even though the population in the working age group (15 to 64) might not all be gainfully employed. Bloom further indicates that the dividend is not automatic and depends on factors like providing quality education and healthcare, as well as creating enough jobs to absorb the growing working-age population.

Figure 2.3.1.6: Distribution of population by broad age groups, Census (2001-2022)



	0 - 14	15 - 64	65 and above
2001	32,1	63,0	4,9
2011	29,2	65,5	5,3
2022	26,4	67,2	6,5

Source: Census 2001, 2011 and 2022, Stats SA

Figure 2.3.1.6 shows the distribution of population by three broad age groups – children (0 to 14), working-age population (15 to 64), and the elderly (65+) – over three census periods (2001–2022) in South Africa. The results indicate that the proportion of the working-age population (15 to 64) grew by 4,2 percentage points from 63,0% in 2001 to 67,2% in 2022, while that of children (0 to 14) has decreased by 5,7 percentage points from 32,1% to 26,4% over the same period. On the other hand, the proportion of the elderly (65 and above) has increased by 1,6 percentage points from 4,9% in 2001 to 6,5% in 2022.

Given the results above, the country is currently experiencing a favourable demographic shift that presents a potential demographic dividend. This window of opportunity is driven by the decreasing proportion of dependents and the simultaneous growth of the working-age population (defined when the population (15 to 64) has a ratio of 1.7 or more compared to the other two groups). To realize the full economic benefits, however, the country must implement effective policies and adhere to sound corporate governance principles.

2.3.2 Gross Domestic Product

The South African economy experienced strong expansion in the mid-2000, peaking at 5,6% in 2006. Commodity exports and global demand contributed significantly to the expansion. Subsequently, South Africa slipped into recession, with a sharp contraction of 1,5% in 2009 due to the 2008 global financial crisis. Post 2010, the economic growth rates slowed down, averaging 1,6% between 2011 and 2019, hampered by a combination of energy shortages, labour unrest, and weak investment. South Africa experienced the deepest recession in 2020, with consecutive contractions of 0,3% in 2019 and 6,2% in 2020. The years 2022 and 2023 showed modest recovery, with growth rates below historical averages.

Figure 2.3.2.1: Annual Gross Domestic Product growth for 2006-2023 (at 2015 constant prices)

Source: Gross Domestic Product (P0441) (2006–2023), Stats SA

In line with South Africa's broader economic trajectory, household final consumption expenditure (HFCE) displayed vigorous growth during the mid-2000s, decelerated sharply after the 2008 global financial crisis, stagnated throughout the 2010s, and suffered its deepest contraction on record in 2020 as a result of the COVID-19 pandemic and associated lockdowns. Although a partial rebound followed in 2021–2023, real consumption growth has remained well below the levels seen before 2010. Over the full 2006 to 2023 period, the fastest-growing categories were communications (average annual real growth of 5,2%), clothing and footwear (4,6%), and miscellaneous goods and services (4,2%).

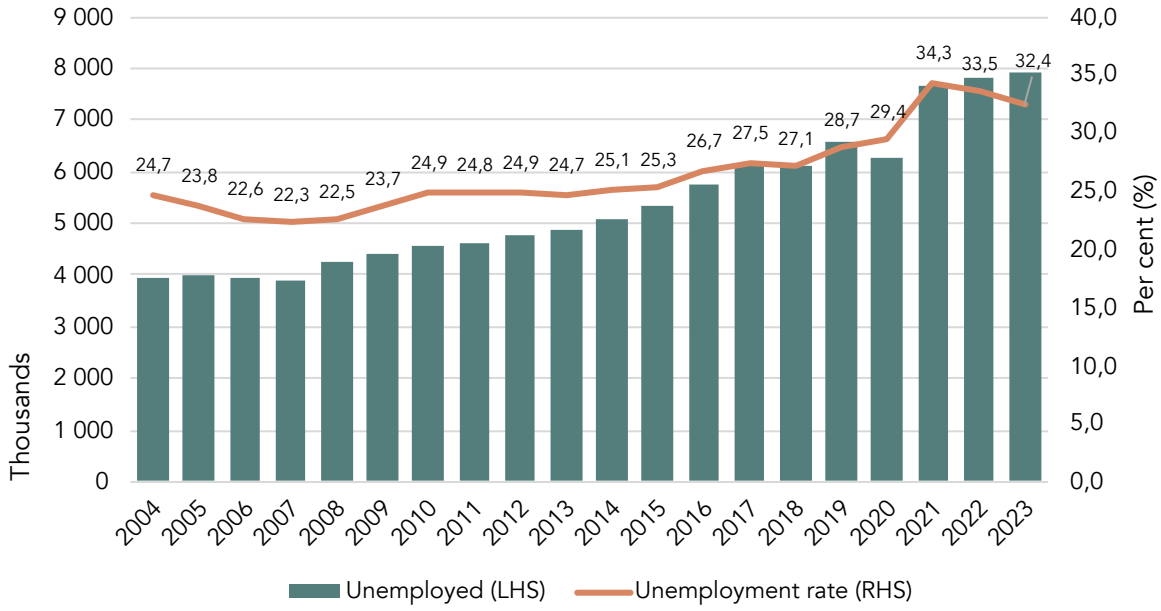
2.3.3 Unemployment

As noted in Section 2.3.2, the COVID-19 pandemic caused a sharp contraction in South Africa's GDP. This contraction led to widespread job losses, especially in vulnerable sectors. Compared to the global financial crisis of 2008/09, the impact of the pandemic on the labour market was much greater.

Between 2004 and 2023, the number of unemployed persons increased by roughly 4,0 million, from 3,9 million in 2004 to 7,9 million in 2023, resulting in an increase in the unemployment rate by 7,7 percentage points from 24,7% to 32,4%. In the second quarter of 2020, a staggering 2,2 million job losses were recorded compared to the first quarter of 2020 as a result of the COVID-19 pandemic and subsequent lockdowns. In addition to the large decline in employment, unemployment declined substantially as well – decreasing by 2,8 million to 4,3 million compared to Q1:2020 mainly because the national lockdown hindered people from looking for work. These changes resulted in a significant decrease of 6,8 percentage points in the official unemployment rate from 30,1% in quarter 1 of 2020 to 23,3% in quarter of 2 2020.

Although employment levels have surpassed the pre-COVID-19 levels, unemployment has remained above the pre-COVID-19 levels at 32,4% in 2023, indicating structural weaknesses in the labour market.

Figure 2.3.3.1: Number of unemployed persons and the unemployment rate from 2004 to 2023



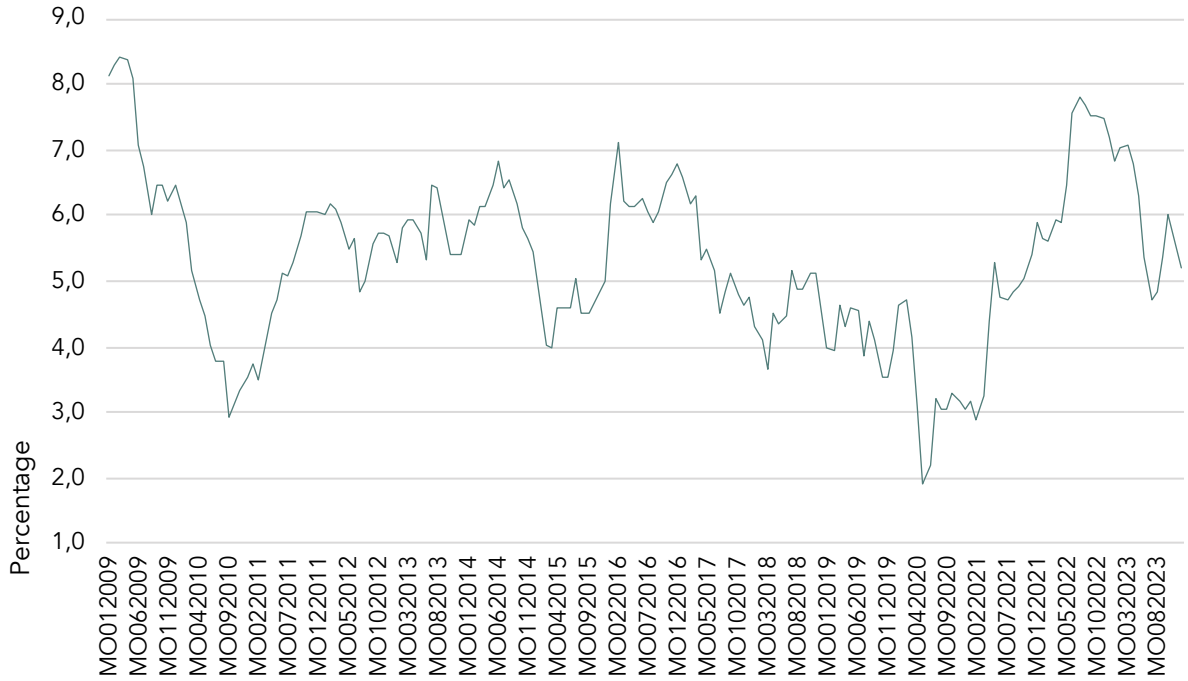
Source: Quarterly Labour Force Survey (P0211) (2004 – 2023), Stats SA

2.3.4 Inflation

Figure 2.3.4.1 shows the year-on-year changes in headline CPI from 2009 to 2023. Over this period, several notable shifts are evident. Inflation reached its lowest level around mid-2020, coinciding with the COVID-19 pandemic. The highest peak during the entire period was in the first half of 2009, when inflation rose to 8,4%, following the global economic recession.

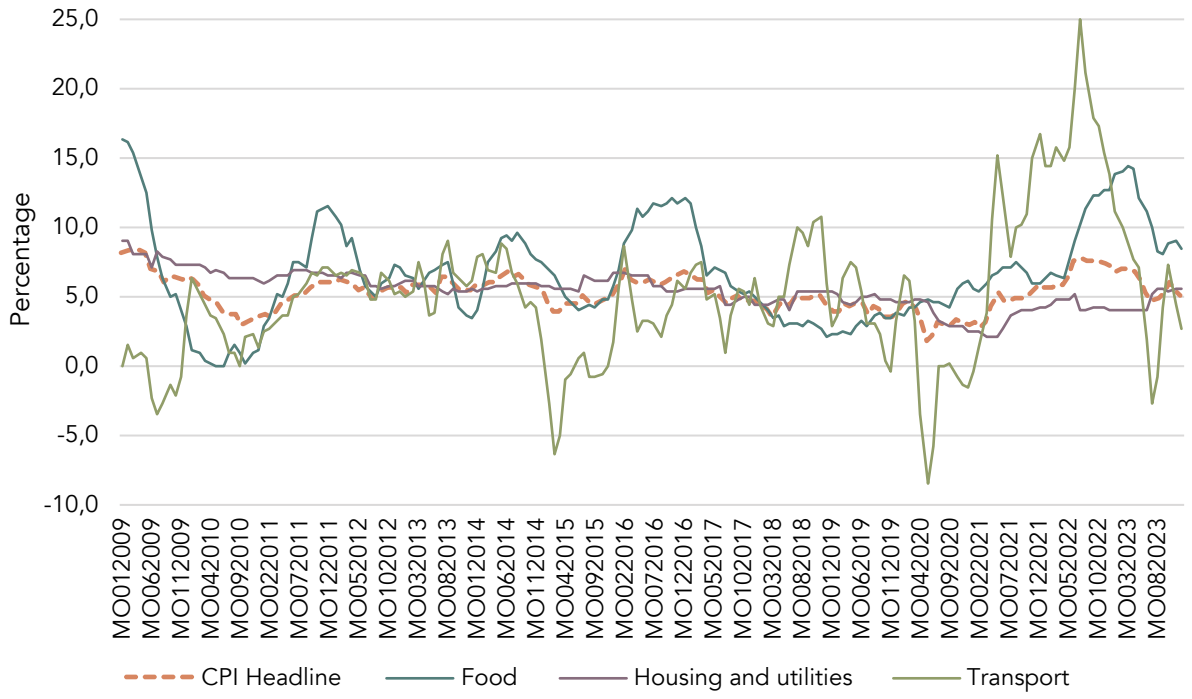
From 2015 onwards, the trend reveals distinct fluctuations. A peak was recorded in January 2016 at 7,1%, followed by a dip to 3,7% in March 2018. Another significant decline occurred in May 2020, when inflation dropped to 1,9%, followed by a general increase until July 2022, when the year-on-year rate reached 7,8%.

Figure 2.3.4.1: Headline CPI, year-on-year percentage changes (2009–2023)



Source: Consumer Price Index (P0141) (2009–2023), Stats SA

Figure 2.3.4.2: Year-on-year percentage changes in headline and selected CPI components (2009–2023)



Source: Consumer Price Index (P0141) (2009–2023), Stats SA

Figure 2.3.4.2 compares headline CPI with food, housing and utilities, and transport inflation rates. Headline CPI has remained relatively stable, fluctuating mostly between 4% and 7%, but sharp food price spikes (notably in 2011, 2016, and 2022) generally pushed overall inflation higher. From 2020 to 2022, both food inflation and headline CPI trended upward, with food inflation rising above 12% and headline CPI peaking just below 8%. While the broader index is cushioned by its diverse composition, food price surges have reliably driven overall inflation upward. This effect is especially regressive, as IES results show that the poorest households spend 30,5% of their income on food, compared to less than 10% for the richest decile.

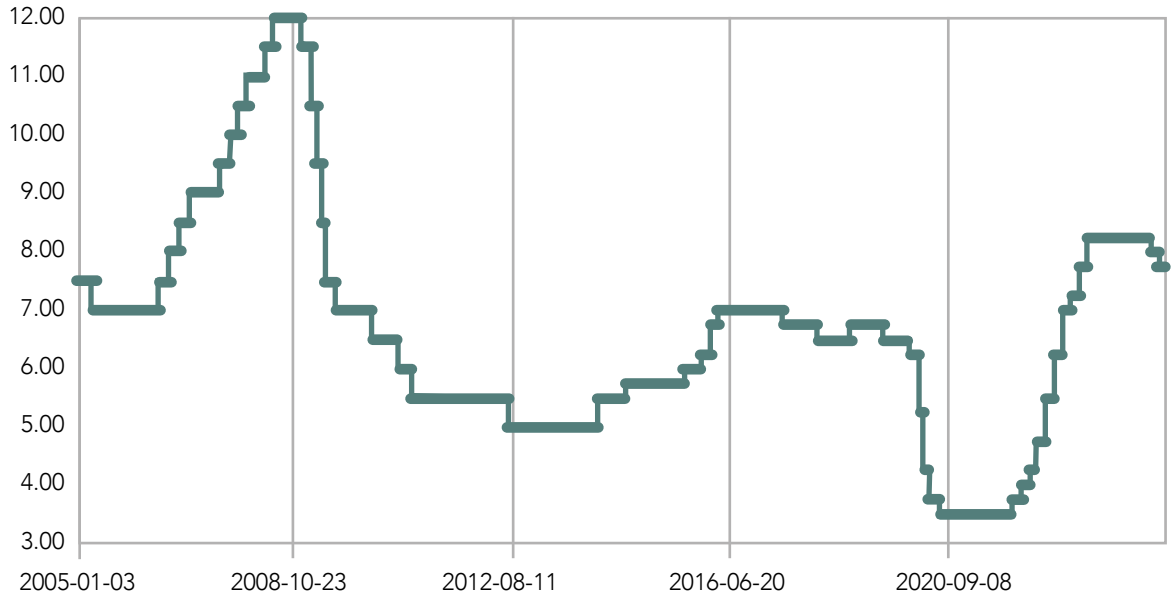
When compared with the headline CPI, housing and utilities inflation has told a different story. Both measures fell sharply from high levels in 2009 and tracked each other closely from 2012 to 2016. During the 2021–2022 period, headline CPI surged toward 8%, while housing and utilities inflation also increased, but more moderately, mirroring the overall trend from below. By 2023, this divergence narrowed as CPI eased, and housing costs inched up.

Transport inflation was the most volatile. It peaked just above 10% in 2018, plunged to -8,3% in May 2020, and then surged to 25% in July 2022 before declining again. These swings strongly influenced CPI movements, though less dramatically. Importantly, transport carries substantial weight, accounting for 15,3% of household consumption, making it a critical driver of the overall index. In sum, food, housing and utilities, and transport exert strong pressure on headline CPI, but the broader index remains steadier because it averages across multiple products and services.

2.3.5 Interest rates

The Monetary Policy Committee (MPC) of the South African Reserve Bank (SARB) sets the repurchase rate (repo rate), a short-term interest rate at which the SARB lends money to commercial banks. In so doing it guides the shorter-end of the yield curve, anchoring money market interest rates. The Bank's repo rate (see Figure 2.3.5.1) influences the interest rate charged by commercial banks, namely the prime lending rate (see Figure 2.3.5.2). Through this mechanism, the SARB determines the cost of credit, affecting companies' and households' choices on consumption and investment.

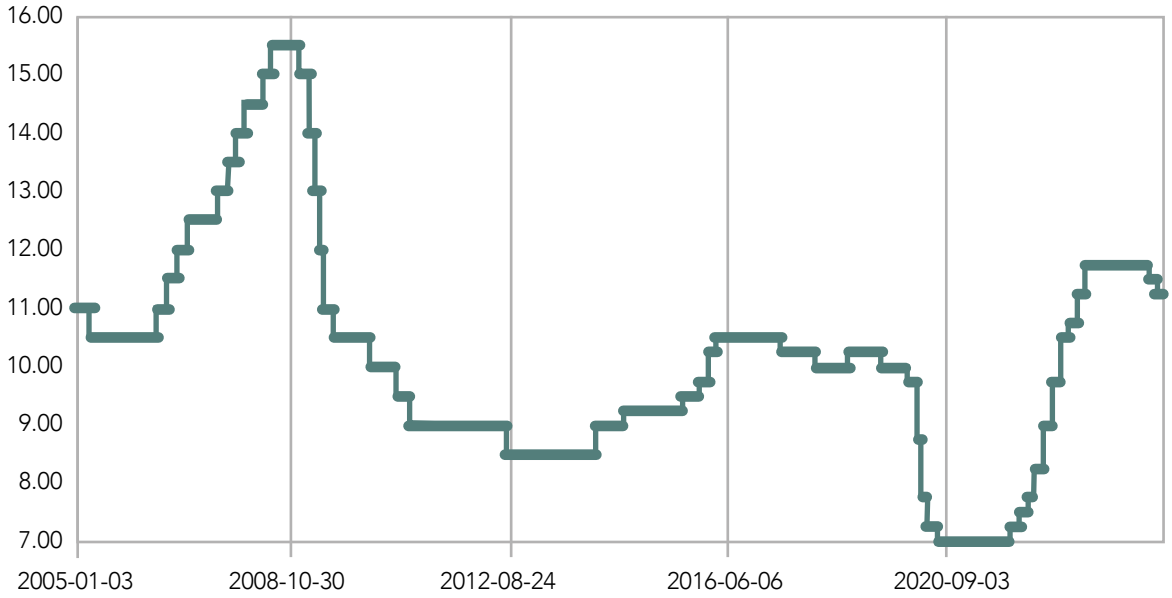
Figure 2.3.5.1: Repo rates (2005–2024)



Source: South African Reserve Bank (SARB) (2005-2024)

Over the course of data collection for the IES 2022/23, households experienced four rate increases in the prime lending rate totaling 125 basis points, from 10,50% in late 2022 to 11,75% by the late 2023. These increases in prime lending rate makes borrowing more expensive for consumers (and businesses) which can lead to decreased spending and generally slower economic activity.

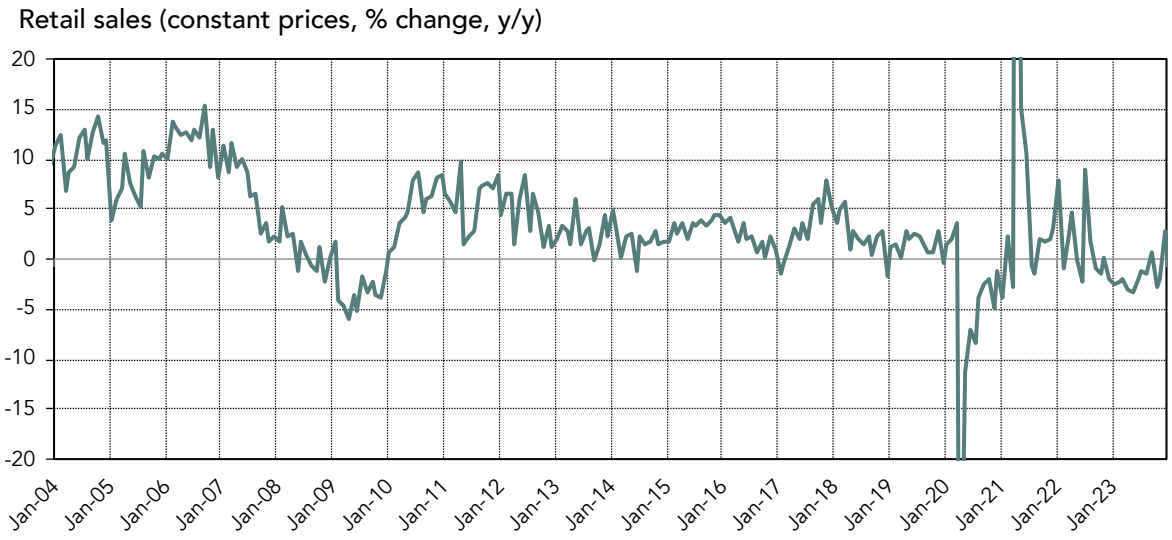
Figure 2.3.5.2: Prime lending rates (2005–2024)



Source: South African Reserve Bank (SARB) (2005-2024)

2.3.6 Retail sales

Figure 2.3.6.1: Retail sales (2005–2024)



Source: Retail Trade Sales (P6242.1) (2004–2024), Stats SA

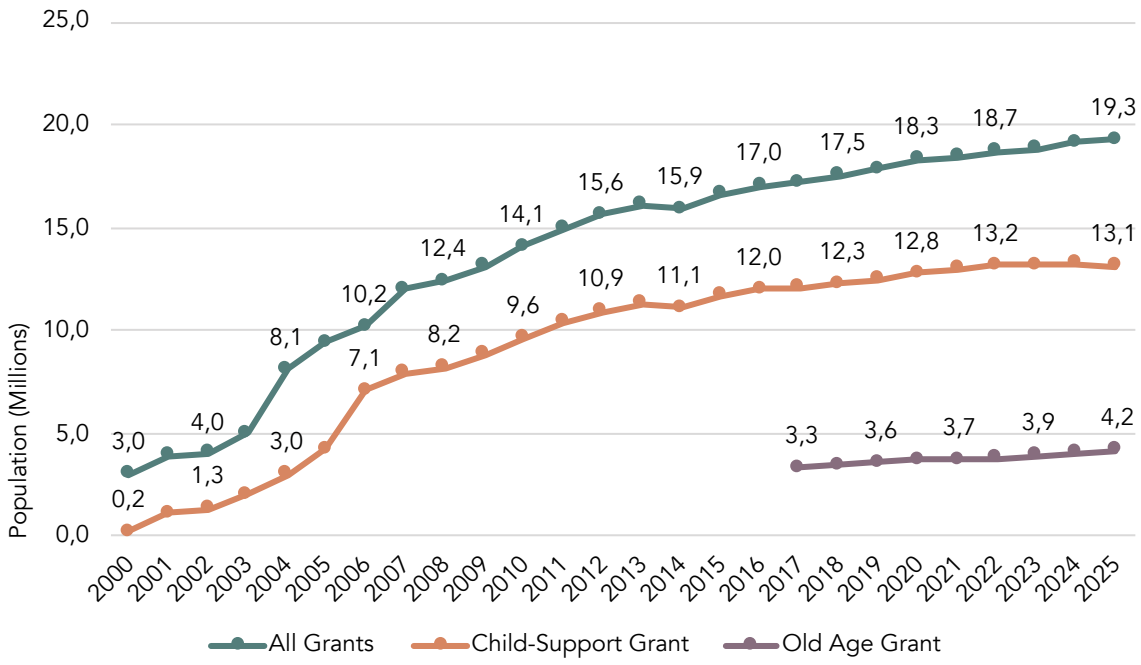
From 2016 to 2019, retail sales growth was relatively stable, fluctuating mostly between 0% and 5%, indicating moderate and consistent consumer spending during this period. There were occasional small dips below zero, but overall, the trend suggested steady economic conditions. In early 2020, the series experienced a sharp and unprecedented decline, dropping to nearly -20% due to the COVID-19 pandemic and lockdown measures. This was followed by a dramatic rebound in 2021, with growth surging above 15%, driven by base effects and the reopening of economic activity. After this spike, growth normalized but remained volatile through 2022 and 2023 when IES 2022/23 data collection took place, oscillating between slightly negative and around 5%, reflecting subdued demand amid rising inflation and global economic uncertainty. Overall, the period from 2016 to 2023 shows a transition from stability to extreme pandemic-induced volatility, followed by a return to modest but uneven growth.

2.3.7 Social protection

South Africa's social assistance system is widely regarded as one of the most comprehensive and well-developed in Africa. It targets the most vulnerable groups – children, older persons, and individuals with disabilities – providing a critical safety net that helps reduce poverty and promote social stability.

Over the past 25 years, the scale of the system has expanded substantially as seen in Figure 2.3.7.1 below. The total number of social grants grew from 3,0 million in 2000 to 19,3 million in 2025. This increase was driven mainly by the rapid expansion of the Child Support Grant (CSG), which rose from 0,2 million to 13,1 million beneficiaries over the same period.

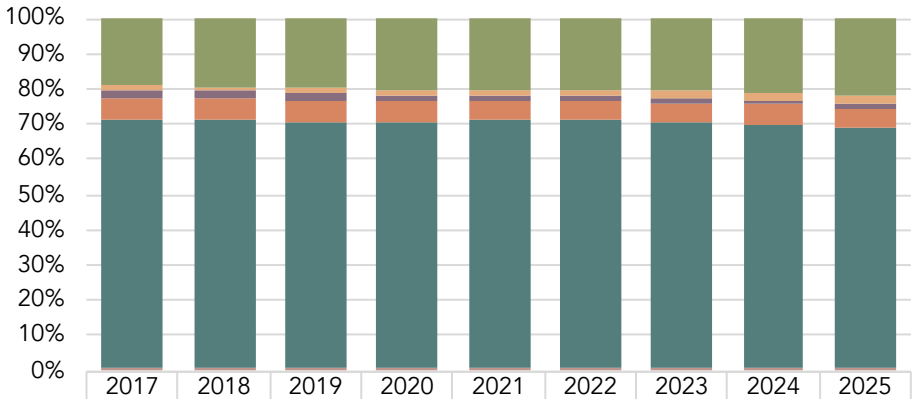
Figure 2.3.7.1: Number of social grants disbursed between 2000 and 2025



Source: South African Social Security Agency (SASSA), SOCPEN Database (2000-2025)

While the CSG continues to account for the largest share of all grants, its proportion declined slightly from 70,2% in 2017 to 68,1% in 2025. In contrast, the share of Old Age Grants (OAG) increased from 19,2% to 21,6% over that period.

Figure 2.3.7.2: Share of different social grants disbursed between 2017 and 2025

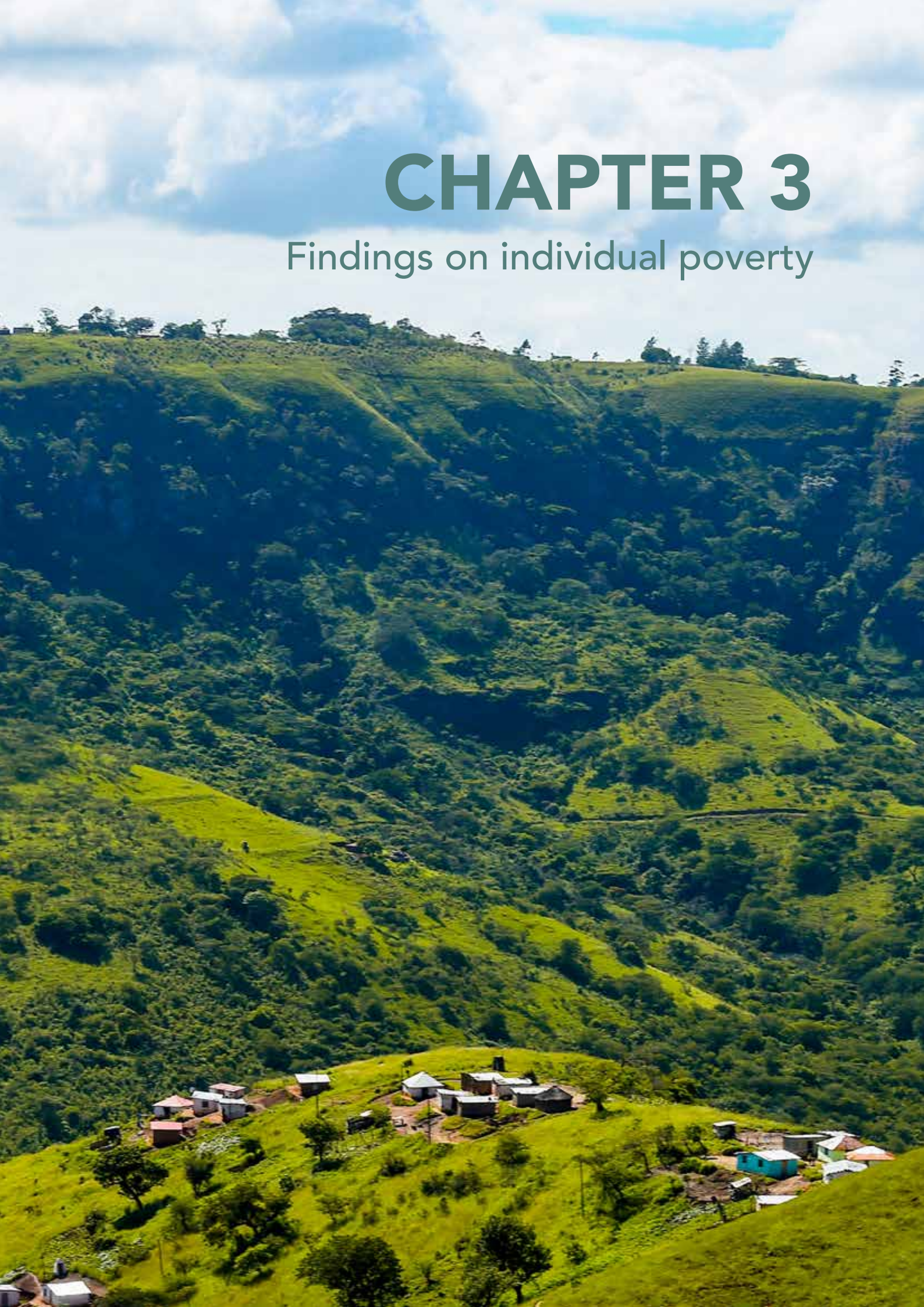


	2017	2018	2019	2020	2021	2022	2023	2024	2025
War Veteran's Grant	0,0	0,0	0,0	0,0	0,0	0,0	0,0	0,0	0,0
Old Age Grant	19,2	19,5	19,9	20,1	20,2	20,2	20,6	21,1	21,6
Grant-in-Aid	1,0	1,1	1,2	1,5	1,5	1,5	1,7	2,1	2,7
Foster Children	2,6	2,4	2,2	1,9	1,7	1,6	1,5	1,3	1,2
Disability Grant	6,2	6,1	5,9	5,7	5,4	5,4	5,5	5,5	5,5
Child Support Grant	70,2	70,1	69,9	69,9	70,5	70,5	69,8	69,1	68,1
Care Dependency Grant	0,8	0,8	0,8	0,8	0,8	0,8	0,8	0,9	0,9

Source: South African Social Security Agency (SASSA), SOCPEN Database (2017-2025)

CHAPTER 3

Findings on individual poverty



3.1 – Introduction

This chapter examines poverty levels and trends among individuals across various demographic and socio-economic categories, such as sex, population group, age, educational attainment, province, settlement type, household size, and metropolitan areas for the years 2006, 2009, 2011, 2015, and 2023. Overall, poverty levels in South Africa generally declined across all poverty lines between 2006 and 2023.

In 2023, 37,9% of the population (equivalent to roughly four out of every ten people in the country) were living below the LBPL. In 2006, the poverty headcount based on the LBPL was measured to be 57,5%, which dropped in 2009 to 55,7%, and then again in 2011 to 45,8%. In 2015, the poverty headcount rose slightly by 0,9 percentage points to 48,6%, before declining to our current level of 37,9% in 2023. This represents a reduction of 19,6 percentage points from the start of the series in 2006.

Persistent disparities were observed, with poverty disproportionately affecting children, black Africans, females, and those living in rural areas, particularly in provinces like KwaZulu-Natal, North West, Limpopo, and Eastern Cape. Other characteristics also played a noticeable role as those living in larger households and those with lower levels of educational attainment were strongly associated with higher poverty rates.

As observed with the poverty headcount, a similar declining trend over time was evident in the poverty gap, which measures how far below the poverty line the average person falls. The highest poverty gap in the series was recorded in 2009 at 27,1%, following a similarly high level of 27,0% in 2006. The gap then declined significantly to 19,7% in 2011, before rising slightly to 20,3% in 2015. By 2023, the poverty gap decreased to 14,4%, representing a substantial improvement over the period and indicating that, on average, poor households were much closer to the poverty line in 2023 than in earlier years.

3.2 – Poverty and sex

Overall, poverty headcounts declined for both sexes between 2006 and 2023. Throughout the period, females consistently exhibited higher poverty levels than their male counterparts. Both sexes reported a notable decline in poverty between 2006 and 2023. The poverty headcount for males decreased from 54,7% in 2006 to 36,0% in 2023, while those for females dropped from 60,3% to 39,7% over the same period.

Figure 3.2.1: Poverty headcount by sex (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

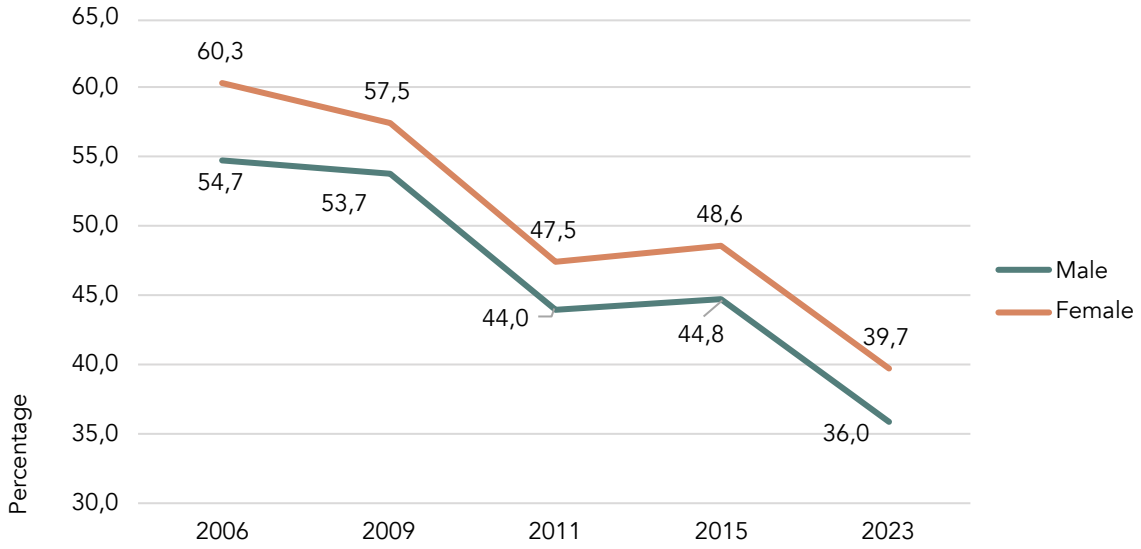


Figure 3.2.1 illustrates the poverty headcount by sex from 2006 to 2023. According to the figure, females consistently had higher poverty rates as compared to their male counterparts across all data points. The poverty headcount for males declined from 54,7% in 2006 to 53,7% in 2009 (a 1,0 percentage point decrease) as compared to 60,3% to 57,5% (a 2,8 percentage point decrease) for females during the same period. Between 2011 and 2015, both sexes saw a minor increase in their headcount, with males increasing by 0,8 percentage points (44,0% to 44,8%) as compared to females who experienced a 1,1 percentage point increase (47,5% to 48,6%). Between 2015 and 2023, the poverty headcount for both sexes declined by roughly 8,8 percentage points to 39,7% for females and 36,0% for males. Overall, both males and females saw notable improvements in their poverty rates between 2006 and 2023.

Table 3.2.1: Poverty measures by sex (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

	Poverty Headcount (P0)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**57,5**	**55,7**	**45,8**	**46,7**	**37,9**
Male	54,7	53,7	44,0	44,8	36,0
Female	60,3	57,5	47,5	48,6	39,7
	Poverty Gap (P1)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**27,0**	**27,1**	**19,7**	**20,3**	**14,4**
Male	25,4	26,0	18,8	19,3	13,6
Female	28,5	28,1	20,6	21,2	15,2
	Severity of Poverty (P2)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**15,6**	**16,1**	**10,8**	**11,2**	**7,3**
Male	14,6	15,4	10,3	10,7	6,8
Female	16,5	16,8	11,3	11,8	7,7

As observed in Table 3.2.1, South Africa's poverty gap fell from 27,0% in 2006 to 14,4% in 2023, indicating a shift closer to the poverty line. Females experienced higher poverty gaps as compared to their male counterparts. Between 2006 and 2009, poverty gap for males slightly increased from 25,4% to 26,0%, (a 0,6 percentage point increase), whereas females experienced a slight decline in the poverty gap of 0,4 percentage points (from 28,5% to 28,1%) during the same period. The poverty gap for both sexes rose slightly between 2011 and 2015, with males experiencing a 0,5 percentage point increase from 18,8% in 2011 to 19,3% in 2015 as compared to their female counterparts who experienced an increase from 20,6% to 21,2% (a 0,6 percentage point increase) over the same period.

Figure 3.2.2: Poverty shares by sex (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

Table 3.2.2: Poverty shares by sex (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

Sex	Poverty Shares				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**
Male	46,7	46,8	46,7	46,7	46,4
Female	53,0	53,2	53,3	53,3	53,6

According to Figure 3.2.2 and Table 3.2.2, females had a higher share of poverty than males across all five data points. Given that females constitute a larger proportion of the population, a higher share among women is to be expected. While the poverty shares for females slightly increased by 0,6 percentage points from 53,0% to 53,6% between 2006 and 2023, males registered a 0,3 percentage point decline from 46,7% to 46,4%.

3.3 – Poverty and population group

Overall, South Africa achieved meaningful progress in reducing poverty at the LBPL between 2006 and 2023. However, poverty remained disproportionately concentrated among black Africans and coloureds, while whites and Indians/Asians experienced considerably lower rates. Despite national improvements, the period from 2015 to 2023 reveals persistent disparities among population groups, with black Africans continuing to carry the highest share of poverty.

Figure 3.3.1: Poverty headcount by population group (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

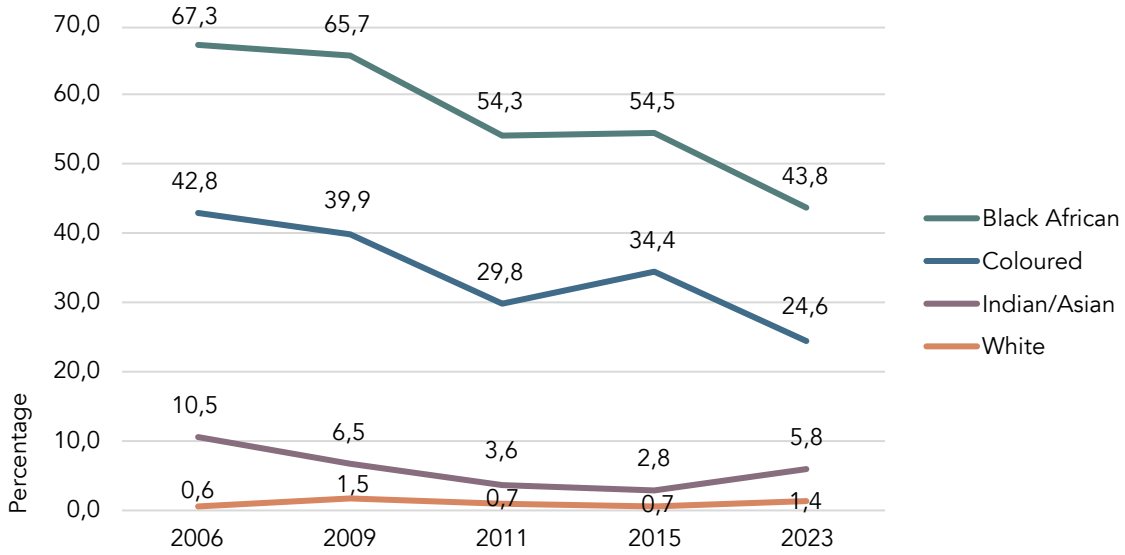


Figure 3.3.1 shows that poverty headcount for black Africans decreased from 67,3% in 2006 to 43,8% in 2023. Despite the reduction, black Africans consistently had the highest poverty levels compared to the other population groups. Coloureds experienced a steady and significant decline in poverty levels, dropping from 42,8% in 2006 to 24,6% in 2023. Indians/Asians consistently showed very low levels of poverty throughout the period declining from 10,5% in 2006 to 2,8% in 2015, before rising to 5,8% in 2023. The poverty headcount for whites remained the lowest among all population groups across the series; however, their poverty levels more than doubled by increasing from 0,6% in 2006 to 1,4% in 2023.

Table 3.3.1: Poverty measures by population group (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

	Poverty Headcount (P0)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**57,5**	**55,7**	**45,8**	**46,7**	**37,9**
Black African	67,3	65,7	54,3	54,5	43,8
Coloured	42,8	39,9	29,8	34,4	24,6
Indian/Asian	10,5	6,5	3,6	2,8	5,8
White	0,6	1,5	0,7	0,7	1,4
	Poverty Gap (P1)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**27,0**	**27,1**	**19,7**	**20,3**	**14,4**
Black African	31,9	32,4	23,6	24,0	16,8
Coloured	17,3	16,2	10,4	12,3	7,8
Indian/Asian	2,8	1,2	0,9	0,6	1,3
White	0,1	0,5	0,2	0,2	0,4
	Severity of Poverty (P2)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**15,6**	**16,1**	**10,8**	**11,2**	**7,3**
Black African	18,6	19,4	13,1	13,4	8,6
Coloured	9,0	8,5	4,9	6,0	3,4
Indian/Asian	1,4	0,4	0,4	0,2	0,5
White	0,1	0,3	0,1	0,0	0,1

According to Table 3.3.1, black Africans and coloureds recorded the highest poverty gaps, but also saw the most significant reductions in these gaps over the series when compared to other population groups. The poverty gap for black Africans dropped by nearly half from 31,9% in 2006 to 16,8% in 2023, while for coloureds it declined from 17,3 % to 7,8% over the same period. Indians/Asians and whites consistently had smaller poverty gaps. For Indians/Asians, the poverty gap stood at 2,8% in 2006, which then fell to a series low of 0,6 in 2015, before increasing to 1,3% in 2023. The poverty gap for whites remained below 1,0% throughout the entire period.

Table 3.3.2: Poverty shares by population group (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

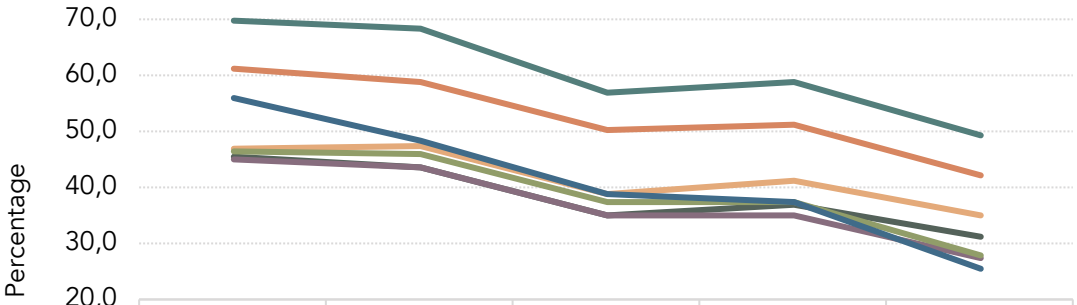
Population group	Poverty Shares				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**
Black African	92,6	93,0	93,8	93,2	93,6
Coloured	6,6	6,5	5,9	6,6	5,7
Indian/Asian	0,4	0,3	0,2	0,2	0,4
White	0,1	0,3	0,1	0,1	0,3

Table 3.3.2 shows that the share of poverty was heavily concentrated among black Africans, increasing slightly from 92,6% in 2006 to 93,6% in 2023, with a peak of 93,8% in 2011. Coloureds were the second largest contributors to poverty, with their poverty share ranging from 6,6% in 2006 to 5,7% in 2023, although it rose temporarily to 6,6% in 2015. Indians/Asians and whites were small contributors to the overall poverty share. Indians/Asians started and ended the period at the same share of 0,4% in 2006 and 2023, even though it dropped to 0,2% in 2011 and 2015. The share for whites, while small, rose gradually from 0,1% in 2006 to 0,3% in 2023, reflecting a slight but consistent upward shift.

3.4 – Poverty and age

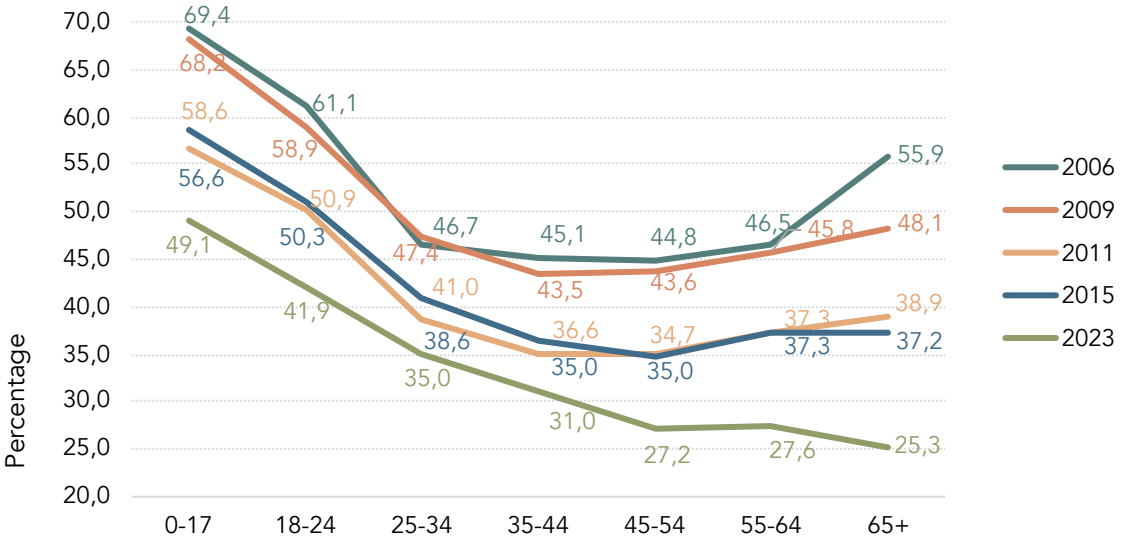
Figures 3.4.1 and 3.4.2 depict poverty levels and trends by age categories for 2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023. The figures show that in South Africa, poverty was prevalent among the child population (0 to 17 years old); this declined as individuals become adults (18 to 54 years), but rose again as individuals approached retirement and beyond (55 years and older). However, this trend deviated slightly between 2015 and 2023, when the poverty headcount started to increase for the 55 to 64 age group, but then declined for those aged 65 years and above.

Figure 3.4.1: Poverty headcount by age (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)



	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
0-17	69,4	68,2	56,6	58,6	49,1
18-24	61,1	58,9	50,3	50,9	41,9
25-34	46,7	47,4	38,6	41,0	35,0
35-44	45,1	43,5	35,0	36,6	31,0
45-54	44,8	43,6	35,0	34,7	27,2
55-64	46,5	45,8	37,3	37,3	27,6
65+	55,9	48,1	38,9	37,2	25,3

Figure 3.4.2: Poverty headcount by age (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)



According to Table 3.4.1, the proportion of the population living in poverty has decreased overall from 2006 to 2023 across all age groups. Children (0 to 17 years) were the most adversely affected by poverty when compared to other age groups across all periods. In 2006, 69,4% of children were considered to be poor according to the LBPL. Between 2009 and 2011, child poverty declined by 17% from 68,2% to 56,6% (a 11,6 percentage point decrease), followed by an increase to 58,6% in 2015, and most recently a decline to 49,1% in 2023. Despite the fact that the proportion of the child population living in poverty dropped by 20,3 percentage points between 2006 and 2023, nearly half of all children in the country were still living in poverty in 2023. During the same year (2023), older persons (65 years and older) recorded the lowest poverty headcount at 25,3% compared to other age groups.

Table 3.4.1: Poverty measures by age (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

	Poverty Headcount (P0)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**57,5**	**55,7**	**45,8**	**46,7**	**37,9**
0 – 17	69,4	68,2	56,6	58,6	49,1
18 – 24	61,1	58,9	50,3	50,9	41,9
25 – 34	46,7	47,4	38,6	41,0	35,0
35 – 44	45,1	43,5	35,0	36,6	31,0
45 – 54	44,8	43,6	35,0	34,7	27,2
55 – 64	46,5	45,8	37,3	37,3	27,6
65+	55,9	48,1	38,9	37,2	25,3
	Poverty Gap (P1)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**27,0**	**27,1**	**19,7**	**20,3**	**14,4**
0 – 17	34,2	34,8	25,3	26,7	19,4
18 – 24	28,7	29,1	21,9	22,2	16,0
25 – 34	20,2	21,7	15,8	16,9	13,2
35 – 44	20,0	19,4	14,1	15,2	11,3
45 – 54	20,0	19,8	14,6	14,0	9,6
55 – 64	20,7	21,1	15,2	15,3	9,8
65+	24,6	23,0	16,1	15,7	8,8
	Severity of Poverty (P2)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**15,6**	**16,1**	**10,8**	**11,2**	**7,3**
0 – 17	20,3	21,2	14,2	15,1	10,0
18 – 24	16,6	17,4	12,1	12,4	8,1
25 – 34	11,2	12,6	8,5	9,1	6,6
35 – 44	11,2	10,9	7,5	8,1	5,5
45 – 54	11,2	11,4	7,8	7,4	4,6
55 – 64	11,6	12,1	8,1	8,2	4,8
65+	13,4	13,3	8,5	8,5	4,2

While the size of the poverty gap varied across age groups, the fluctuating pattern of increases and decreases between 2006 and 2023 was very similar for the 0 to 17, 18 to 24, 25 to 34, and 55 to 64 age categories. With the exception of the 45 to 54 and 65+ age groups, all other groups experienced a continuous decrease between 2006 to 2023. Notably, the poverty gap for the 35 to 44 age category narrowed by 43,5% between 2006 and 2023 failing from 20,0% to 11,3%, indicating that the poor in this age group were getting closer to the poverty line to emerge out of poverty. The poverty headcount for this age category declined from 45,1% in 2006 to 31,0% in 2023.

The severity of poverty exhibited a similar fluctuating pattern as the poverty gap for the 0 to 17, 18 to 24, 25 to 34, and 55 to 64 age groups between 2006 and 2023. For the 35 to 44 age group, both the poverty gap and the severity of poverty followed a similar trend, declining from 2006 to 2011, followed by an increase in 2015, and falling again in 2023. Among older persons (65 +), the severity of poverty decreased between 2006 and 2011, remained stable in 2015, and then declined further in 2023. Despite these fluctuations, the poverty headcount for older persons consistently decreased from 2006 to 2023. This reduction is likely influenced by an increase in the number of the older persons receiving old age grants which may have contributed to alleviating poverty among the country's senior citizens. According to Table 3.4.1, the proportion of the older persons living in poverty decreased by 11,9 percentage points from 37,2% to 25,3% between 2015 and 2023.

Figure 3.4.3: Poverty shares by age (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

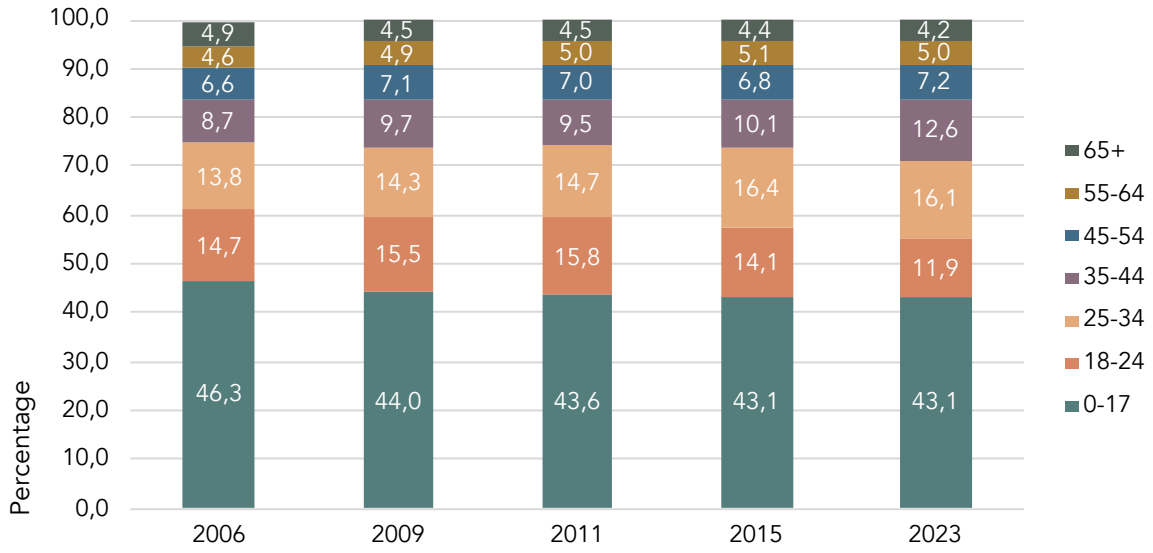


Table 3.4.2: Poverty shares by age (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

Age group	Poverty Shares				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**
0-17	46,3	44,0	43,6	43,1	43,1
18-24	14,7	15,5	15,8	14,1	11,9
25-34	13,8	14,3	14,7	16,4	16,1
35-44	8,7	9,7	9,5	10,1	12,6
45-54	6,6	7,1	7,0	6,8	7,2
55-64	4,6	4,9	5,0	5,1	5,0
65+	4,9	4,5	4,5	4,4	4,2

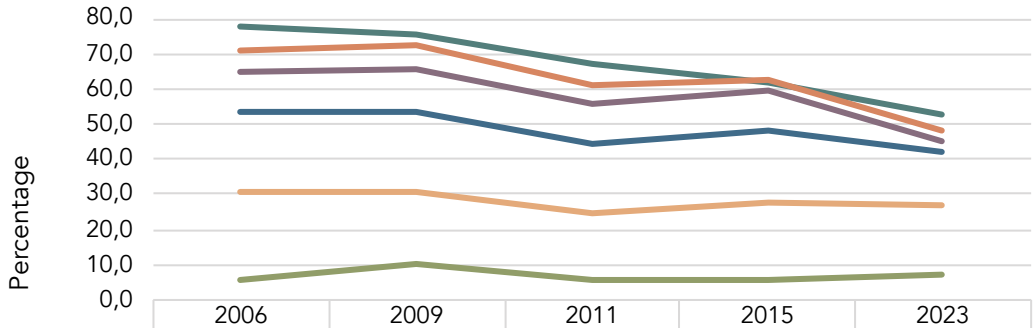
According to Figure 3.4.3 and Table 3.4.2, households with members aged 65 years and older, 18 to 24 years and 0 to 17 years recorded a decline in poverty shares between 2006 and 2023, whereas the other remaining age groups experienced an increase across the same data points. Individuals within age group 35 to 44 years recorded the largest increase from 8,7% in 2006 to 12,6% in 2023 (3,9 percentage points) followed by those aged 25 to 34 years with a 2,3 percentage point increase from 13,8% in 2006 to 16,1% in 2023. Older persons (65 years and older) had the lowest poverty share in 2023 compared to children. The poverty share for individuals aged 0 to 17 years had a constant rate at 43,1% between 2015 and 2023.

3.5 – Poverty and education

Figure 3.5.1 provides an overview of poverty by the educational level attained among individuals aged 18 years and older between 2006 and 2023. The headcount for individuals with no formal schooling or some primary education displayed significantly higher levels of poverty; however, these two categories also reported the largest percentage point decreases between 2006 and 2023, at 24,8 and 22,7 percentage points, respectively. More than seven out of ten adults with no education or some primary were living below the LBPL in 2006, while their proportion dropped to 52,7% and 48,5%, respectively by 2023. Despite this notable decrease in the poverty headcount for adults with no formal education, they still had the highest headcount in 2023 with more than half living in poverty.

While the poverty headcount for those with no formal education declined steadily between 2006 and 2023, the pattern observed for some primary, primary, and some secondary education showed a fluctuating trend. In 2006, their headcounts stood at 71,2%, 65,2%, and 53,2%, respectively. These headcounts increased from 2006 to 2009, and then dropped between 2009 and 2011. From 2011 to 2015, they increased again, before dropping in 2023 to 48,5%, 45,2%, and 41,9%, respectively.

Figure 3.5.1: Poverty headcount by educational level attained for individuals aged 18 years and older (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)



	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
None	77,5	75,5	67,3	61,8	52,7
Some primary	71,2	72,5	61,3	62,7	48,5
Primary	65,2	65,3	55,6	59,9	45,2
Some secondary	53,2	53,7	44,6	47,8	41,9
Matric	31,0	30,7	24,4	28,0	26,7
Higher	6,0	10,2	5,6	6,0	7,4

The poverty headcount for individuals aged 18 years and older with a matric qualification declined from 31,0% in 2006 to 24,4% in 2011. However, since 2011, the headcount increased to 28,0% in 2015, but later dropped to 26,7% by 2023. Individuals with higher qualifications were the only group that experienced an increase in their poverty rate between 2006 and 2023. Their headcount increased by roughly 1,4 percentage points from 6,0% in 2006 to 7,4% in 2023.

Table 3.5.1: Poverty measures by educational level attained for individuals aged 18 years and older (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

	Poverty Headcount (P0)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**50,1**	**48,6**	**39,9**	**40,5**	**32,4**
None	77,5	75,5	67,3	61,8	52,7
Some primary	71,2	72,5	61,3	62,7	48,5
Primary	65,2	65,3	55,6	59,9	45,2
Some secondary	53,2	53,7	44,6	47,8	41,9
Matric	31,0	30,7	24,4	28,0	26,7
Higher	6,0	10,2	5,6	6,0	7,4
	Poverty Gap (P1)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**22,5**	**22,7**	**16,6**	**16,9**	**11,9**
None	38,6	38,6	30,1	29,1	20,9
Some primary	33,7	35,8	27,0	28,4	18,5
Primary	30,0	31,2	23,9	26,9	17,4
Some secondary	23,1	24,7	18,3	19,7	15,8
Matric	12,0	12,7	9,2	10,4	9,3
Higher	2,0	4,0	2,0	1,8	2,1
	Severity of Poverty (P2)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**12,6**	**13,2**	**8,9**	**9,2**	**5,9**
None	23,0	23,5	16,9	16,9	11,1
Some primary	19,6	21,4	15,0	16,2	9,4
Primary	17,0	18,4	13,1	15,3	8,7
Some secondary	12,8	14,2	9,8	10,6	7,9
Matric	6,2	6,9	4,6	5,2	4,5
Higher	1,0	2,1	1,0	0,8	0,9

Table 3.5.1 shows that between 2006 and 2023, the poverty gap declined across almost all education categories, indicating meaningful improvements in reducing the depth of poverty. For individuals aged 18 years and older with no formal education, the poverty gap fell from 38,6% in 2006 to 20,9% in 2023, a decline of 17,7 percentage points. Similar reductions were observed among those with some primary and primary education, where the poverty gap decreased from 33,7% to 18,5% and 30,0% to 17,4%, respectively over the same period.

Among those with some secondary education, the poverty gap decreased from 23,1% to 15,8% between 2006 and 2023. Those with matric qualifications experienced smaller reductions, from 12,0% to 9,3%, reflecting their already relatively low poverty gap. Meanwhile, those with higher qualifications had the lowest poverty gap of all groups. In 2006, the poverty gap for those with a higher qualification stood at 2,0%, which rose to a peak of 4,0% in 2009 before returning to its 2006 level.

The poverty gap among those with no schooling, some primary, and primary education saw notable declines between 2006 and 2023, dropping roughly 17,7 percentage points, 15,2 percentage points, and 12,6 percentage points, respectively.

Figure 3.5.2: Poverty shares by educational level attained for individuals aged 18 years and older (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

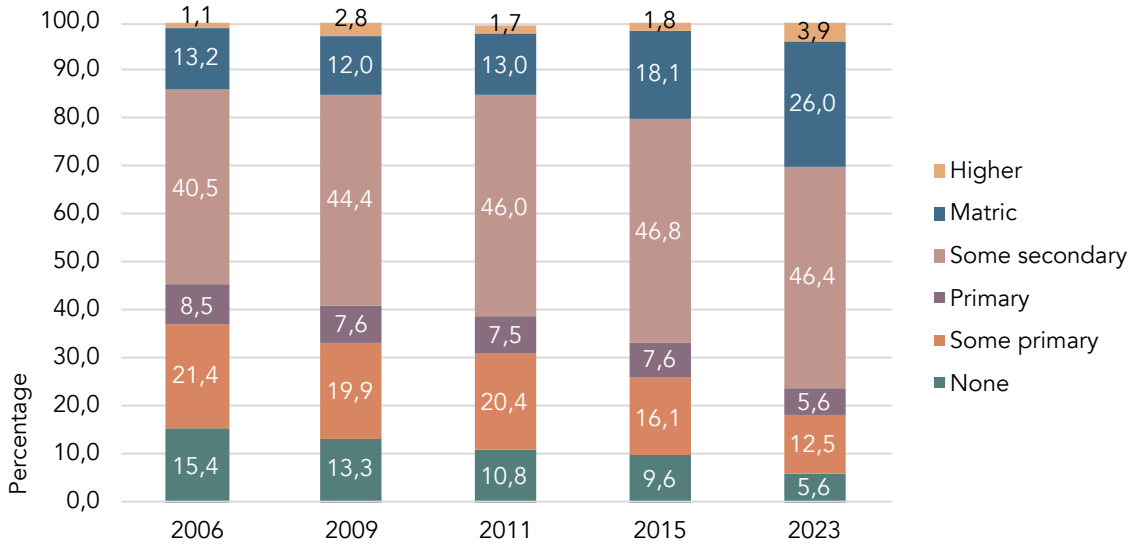


Table 3.5.2: Poverty shares by educational level attained for individuals aged 18 years and older (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

Education	Poverty Shares				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**100**	**100**	**99**	**100**	**100**
None	15,4	13,3	10,8	9,6	5,6
Some primary	21,4	19,9	20,4	16,1	12,5
Primary	8,5	7,6	7,5	7,6	5,6
Some secondary	40,5	44,4	46,0	46,8	46,4
Matric	13,2	12,0	13,0	18,1	26,0
Higher	1,1	2,8	1,7	1,8	3,9

Figure 3.5.2 and Table 3.5.2 show that between 2006 and 2023, the composition of poverty shifted notably across education levels. Individuals aged 18 years and older with some secondary education consistently accounted for the largest share of the poor, ranging from a low of 40,5% in 2006 to a high of 46,8% in 2015. In 2023, their share stood at 46,4%, which represented a 5,9 percentage point increase since 2006.

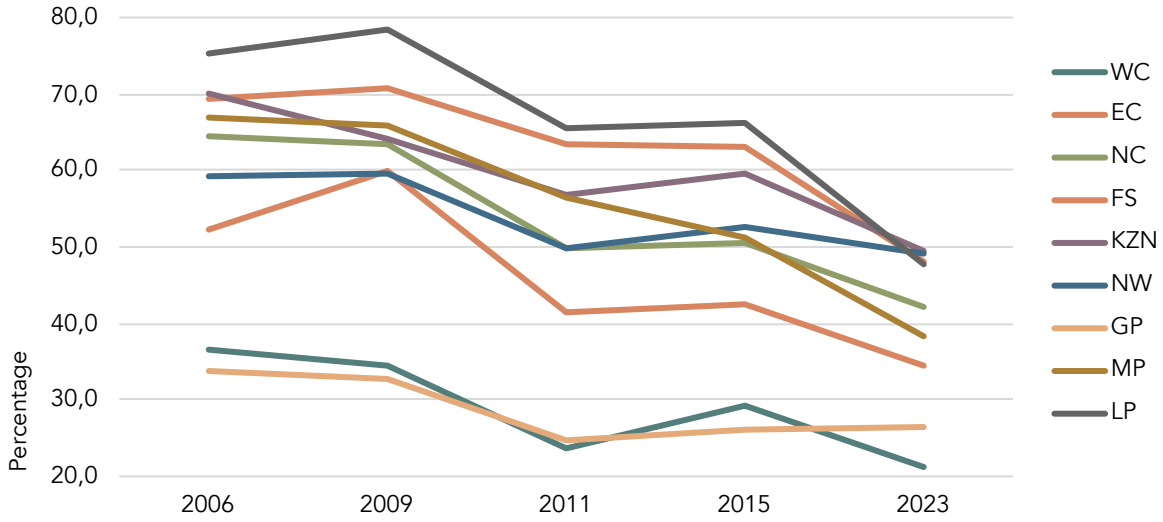
At the lower end of the education spectrum, the poverty shares of those with no schooling and some primary education have declined substantially. The share of the poor with no schooling fell from 15,4% in 2006 to 5,6% in 2023, while the share for those with some primary education decreased from 21,4% to 12,5%. Those with primary education also saw a gradual decline in their share of poverty, from 8,5% to 5,6% between 2006 and 2023.

The most significant change was observed for individuals with a matric qualification, whose share nearly doubled, rising from 13,2% in 2006 to 26,0% in 2023, indicating that even those with matric are struggling to stay out of poverty despite their better educational level. Meanwhile, poverty among individuals with higher education remained low, though it increased slightly to 3,9% in 2023 from 1,1% in 2006.

3.6 – Poverty and province

Table 3.6.1 and Figure 3.6.1 present the poverty headcount by province between 2006 and 2023. According to the figure, Limpopo, KwaZulu-Natal and the Eastern Cape were the poorest provinces in the country on a consistent basis since 2006; however, the ranking changed in 2023 with KwaZulu-Natal surpassing Limpopo as the province with the greatest number of people living in poverty, followed by the North West and the Eastern Cape in second and third place, respectively.

Figure 3.6.1: Poverty headcount by province (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)



In 2006, Limpopo had a poverty headcount of 75,1%, followed by KwaZulu-Natal and Eastern Cape with poverty headcounts of 69,9% and 69,2%, respectively. By 2023, the recorded headcount in KwaZulu-Natal was at 49,6%, followed by North West (49,1%) and the Eastern Cape (48,2%).

Comparing 2006 and 2023 data points, the poverty headcount for Limpopo declined by 36,6% (27,5 percentage points), with KwaZulu-Natal reducing by 29,1% (20,4 percentage points) and Eastern Cape decreasing by 30,3% (21,0 percentage points). The province that showed the largest reduction in the proportion of individuals living below the LBPL was Mpumalanga, declining from 67,0% to 38,4%, which translates to a reduction of 42,7% (28,6 percentage points).

Between 2015 and 2023, the poverty headcount for Limpopo had the largest decrease of 27,9% (18,5 percentage points) from 66,0% to 47,6%, while those for the Eastern Cape dropped by 23,7% (14,9 percentage points) from 63,1% to 48,2%. The poverty headcount for KwaZulu-Natal dropped by 16,9% (10,0 percentage points) from 59,6% to 49,6%. The Western Cape had the second largest reduction in the proportion of people living below the LBPL which shrank by 26,8% (7,8 percentage points) from 29,2% in 2015 to 21,4% in 2023.

The provinces with the lowest headcounts based on the LBPL between 2006 and 2023 were Gauteng and the Western Cape. When comparing the two provinces in 2006, Western Cape had a higher poverty headcount of 36,5% as compared to Gauteng with 33,7%. However, in 2023, Gauteng registered a higher poverty headcount than the Western Cape (26,5% vs 21,4%). For the period 2015 and 2023, the Western Cape showed a notable reduction in the poverty headcount at 7,8 percentage points relative to 0,2 percentage points recorded for Gauteng.

Table 3.6.1: Poverty measures by province (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

	Poverty Headcount (P0)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**57,5**	**55,7**	**45,8**	**46,7**	**37,9**
Western Cape	36,5	34,4	23,7	29,2	21,4
Eastern Cape	69,2	70,9	63,3	63,1	48,2
Northern Cape	64,6	63,4	50,0	50,6	42,3
Free State	52,2	60,1	41,6	42,4	34,4
KwaZulu-Natal	69,9	64,2	56,9	59,6	49,6
North West	59,1	59,7	49,9	52,8	49,1
Gauteng	33,7	32,9	24,7	26,3	26,5
Mpumalanga	67,0	65,8	56,3	51,1	38,4
Limpopo	75,1	78,3	65,5	66,0	47,6
	Poverty Gap (P1)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**27,0**	**27,1**	**19,7**	**20,3**	**14,4**
Western Cape	13,9	13,3	7,8	10,0	7,2
Eastern Cape	33,8	37,0	28,7	30,7	18,4
Northern Cape	31,4	30,0	20,6	21,2	16,4
Free State	21,8	27,2	16,9	16,3	11,6
KwaZulu-Natal	36,1	33,1	25,9	27,1	21,2
North West	28,0	28,3	22,1	23,5	21,3
Gauteng	11,6	12,4	8,7	8,9	9,2
Mpumalanga	32,7	32,8	23,7	21,6	13,2
Limpopo	38,1	44,2	31,1	32,8	16,8
	Severity of Poverty (P2)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**15,6**	**16,1**	**10,8**	**11,2**	**7,3**
Western Cape	7,0	6,8	3,5	4,7	3,4
Eastern Cape	19,5	22,6	16,1	18,2	9,4
Northern Cape	18,5	17,2	10,7	11,5	8,3
Free State	11,3	14,9	8,6	8,1	5,4
KwaZulu-Natal	22,2	20,4	14,7	15,3	11,4
North West	16,2	16,5	12,3	13,1	11,8
Gauteng	5,4	6,2	4,3	4,1	4,3
Mpumalanga	19,6	19,8	12,5	11,7	6,0
Limpopo	22,8	28,6	18,2	19,7	8,0

Table 3.6.1 shows that Limpopo, KwaZulu-Natal and the Eastern Cape were the poorest provinces in 2006 when measured by the poverty gap; this was also the case when poverty was measured by headcount. In 2006, poor individuals in Limpopo were furthest away from the LBPL at 38,1% followed by KwaZulu-Natal (36,1%) and Eastern Cape (33,8%).

The poverty gap for Limpopo decreased by 55,9% (21,3 percentage points) between 2006 and 2023, while KwaZulu-Natal fell by 41,3% (14,9 percentage points) over the same period. Eastern Cape declined from 33,8% to 18,4% which translates to a reduction of 15,4 percentage points. Meanwhile, North West dropped from 28,0% in 2006 to 21,3% in 2023. Limpopo had the largest reduction in their poverty gap from 38,1% to 16,8% between 2006 and 2023.

When comparing 2015 and 2023, poor individuals in Limpopo had the largest reduction in their poverty gap of 48,7% (15,9 percentage points) from 32,8% to 16,8%, while Eastern Cape shrunk from 30,7% to 18,4% over the same period. Despite the poverty gap in North West decreasing by 9,2% (2,2 percentage points) from 23,5% in 2015 to 21,3% in 2023, it remained the province with the largest poverty gap in 2023, followed by KwaZulu-Natal at 21,2% which declined by 21,8% (5,9 percentage points) since 2015.

Figure 3.6.2: Poverty shares by province (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

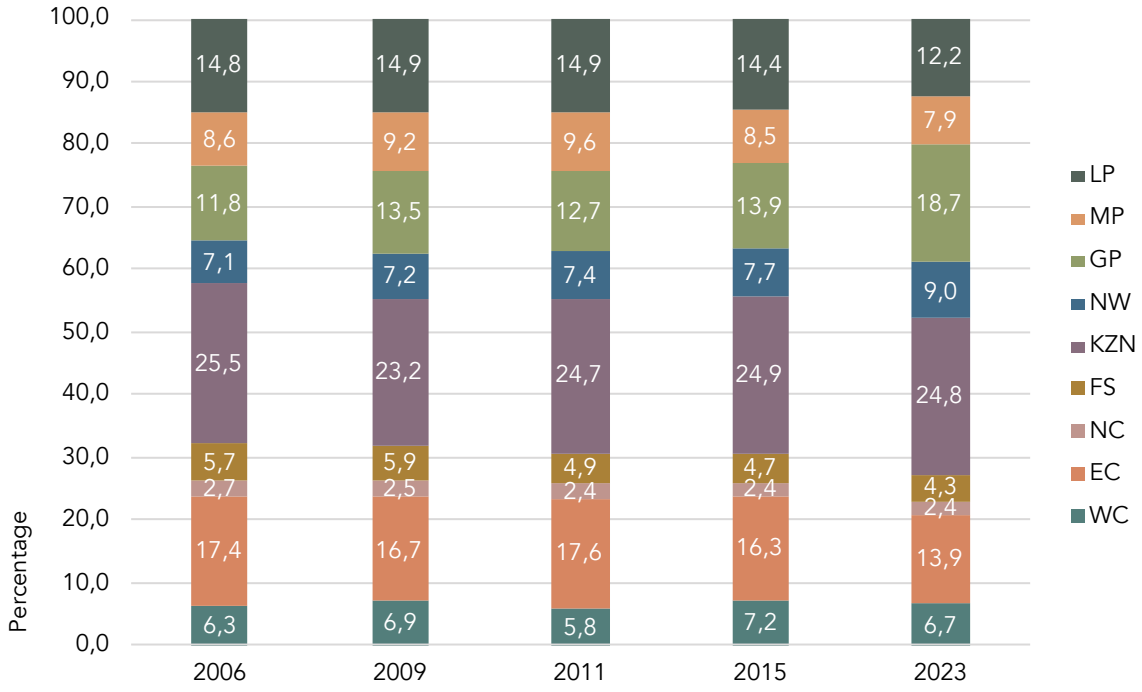


Table 3.6.2: Poverty shares by province (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

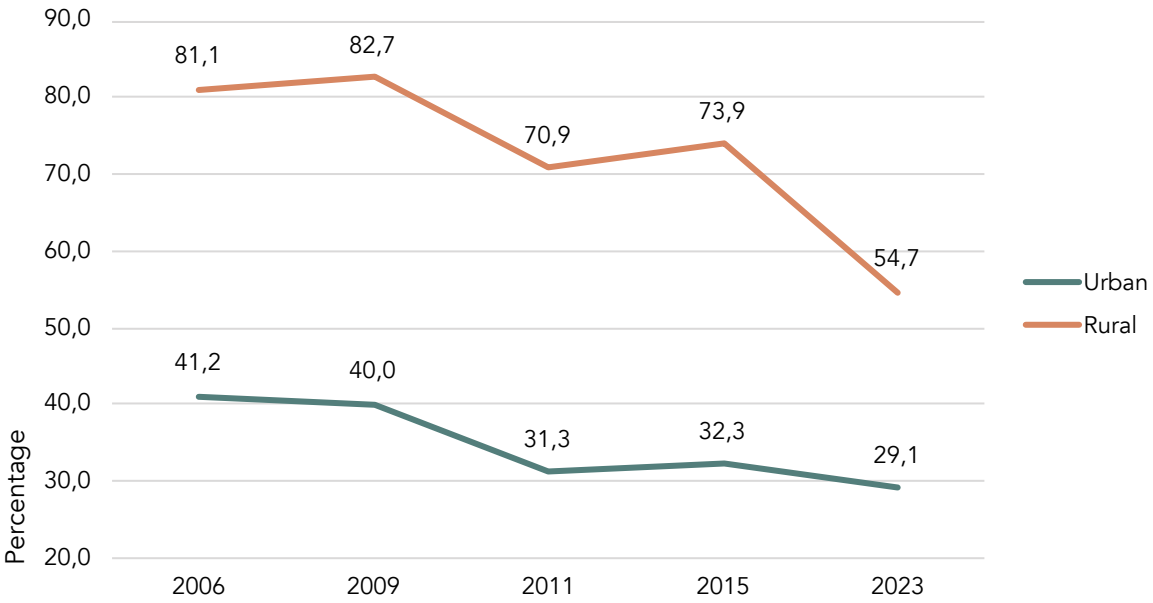
Province	Poverty Shares				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**
Western Cape	6,3	6,9	5,8	7,2	6,7
Eastern Cape	17,4	16,7	17,6	16,3	13,9
Northern Cape	2,7	2,5	2,4	2,4	2,4
Free State	5,7	5,9	4,9	4,7	4,3
KwaZulu-Natal	25,5	23,2	24,7	24,9	24,8
North West	7,1	7,2	7,4	7,7	9,0
Gauteng	11,8	13,5	12,7	13,9	18,7
Mpumalanga	8,6	9,2	9,6	8,5	7,9
Limpopo	14,8	14,9	14,9	14,4	12,2

Figure 3.6.2 and Table 3.6.2 show the share of poverty by province between 2006 and 2023. In 2023, KwaZulu-Natal had the highest poverty share at 24,8%, followed by Gauteng (18,7%), Eastern Cape (13,9%), and Limpopo (12,2%). The Northern Cape accounted for the smallest poverty share which was less than 3,0% across all the data points, which aligns with its relatively small population size compared to other provinces. The poverty share for North West was mostly constant between 2006 to 2015 at less than 8,0%; however, its share increased in 2023 to 9,0% (1,9 percentage points). The biggest change in poverty share between 2006 and 2023 was recorded in Gauteng, which rose by 6,9 percentage points from 11,8% to 18,7%, respectively.

3.7 – Poverty and settlement type

Figure 3.7.1 presents the poverty headcount by settlement type from 2006 to 2023. According to the figure, the proportion of people living below the LBPL declined in both urban and rural settlements; however, rural areas consistently had a much higher poverty headcounts compared to urban areas. For those residing in urban areas, the poverty headcount dropped from 41,2% in 2006 to 29,1% in 2023, representing a decrease of 12,1 percentage points.

Figure 3.7.1: Poverty headcount by settlement type (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)



Greater improvement was recorded in rural areas, where the headcount declined from 81,1% to 54,7% (26,4 percentage points) between 2006 and 2023; notably, the sharpest decline occurred between 2015 and 2023. Although headcount levels fluctuated in both urban and rural areas across the series, the overall pattern reveals a consistent downward trend.

Table 3.7.1: Poverty measures by settlement type (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

	Poverty Headcount (P0)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**57,5**	**55,7**	**45,8**	**46,7**	**37,9**
Urban	41,2	40,0	31,3	32,3	29,1
Rural	81,1	82,7	70,9	73,9	54,7
	Poverty Gap (P1)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**27,0**	**27,1**	**19,7**	**20,3**	**14,4**
Urban	16,3	16,8	11,8	11,8	10,3
Rural	42,4	44,9	33,3	36,2	22,1
	Severity of Poverty (P2)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**15,6**	**16,1**	**10,8**	**11,2**	**7,3**
Urban	8,4	9,1	6,0	5,8	5,0
Rural	26,0	28,2	19,1	21,5	11,5

Table 3.7.1 shows that the poverty gap and severity of poverty estimates for both rural and urban populations declined between 2006 and 2023. In 2006, the poverty gap for the urban poor was 16,3%, while for those living in rural areas the gap was more than double at 42,4%. By 2023, the poverty gap for individuals residing in urban areas declined to 10,3%, representing a 5,9 percentage point drop. Meanwhile, the rural poverty gap fell more sharply to 22,1% in 2023, a decline of 20,3 percentage points since 2006.

The severity of poverty followed a similar trend to the poverty gap. The high poverty gap and severity measures in rural areas highlighted that, despite progress made, poor individuals in rural settlements generally remain further below the poverty line compared to their urban counterparts.

Figure 3.7.2: Poverty shares by settlement type (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

Table 3.7.2: Poverty shares by settlement type (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

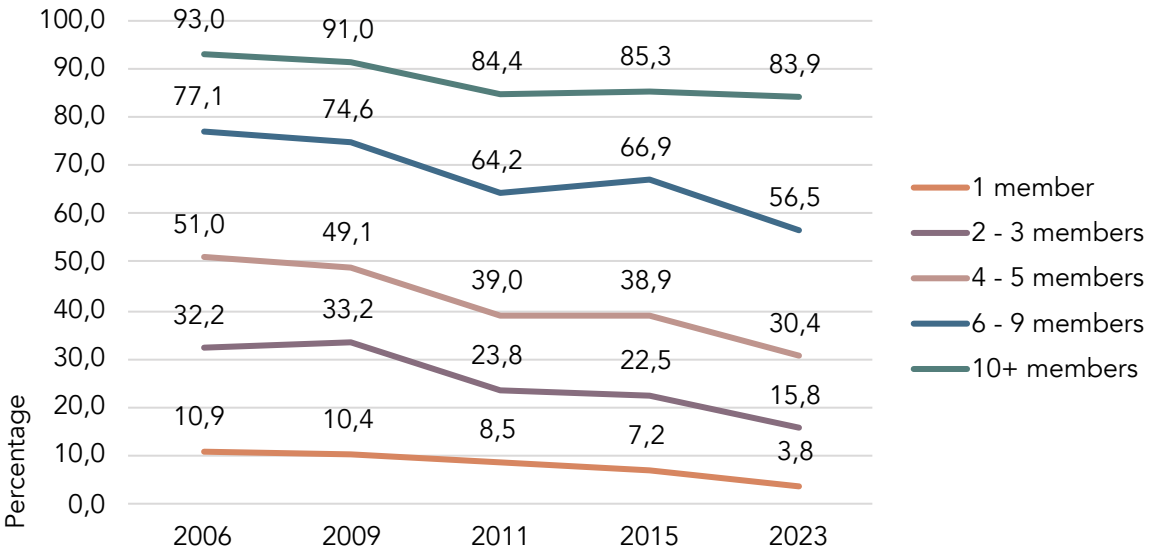
Settlement type	Poverty Shares				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**
Urban	42,2	45,6	43,3	45,2	50,2
Rural	57,8	54,4	56,7	54,8	49,8

The distribution of poverty shares by settlement type from 2006 to 2023 is shown in Figure 3.7.2 and Table 3.7.2. Between 2006 and 2015, the majority of poor persons (based on the LBPL) were shown to be residing in rural areas; however, in 2023, this trend shifted with a slightly greater share of poor persons now residing in urban areas (50,2%) compared to rural areas (49,8%). While this shift in share from rural to urban poverty is notable, this shift was already observed in 2009 when applying the UBPL (see Table D3.7.2 in Annexure), where the urban poor accounted for a larger share of the poor overall.

3.8 – Poverty and household size

This section analyses individual poverty by household size between 2006 and 2023. A general decline in individual poverty was recorded for all household sizes across all data points. However, individuals living in larger household sizes generally experienced higher rates of poverty as compared to those from smaller household sizes.

Figure 3.8.1: Poverty headcount by household size (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)



According to Figure 3.8.1, individuals living in households with 10 or more members had the highest poverty headcount across the series. These large households reported a headcount of 93,0% in 2006, which declined to 84,4% in 2011, then increased slightly to 85,3% in 2015, and later declined to 83,9% in 2023. Poor individuals living in households with 6 to 9 members had the second highest headcount, dropping from 77,1% in 2006 to 56,5% in 2023 (a 20,6 percentage point decline). The poverty headcount for individuals living in households with 4 to 5 members was 51,0% in 2006, declining to 30,4% in 2023. Smaller households with just 2 to 3 members experienced a decline from 32,2% in 2006 to 15,8% in 2023 (a 16,4 percentage point decrease), whereas single-person households registered the lowest poverty rates, falling from 10,9% to 3,8% over the same period.

Table 3.8.1: Poverty measures by household size (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

	Poverty Headcount (P0)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**57,5**	**55,7**	**45,8**	**46,7**	**37,9**
1 member	10,9	10,4	8,5	7,2	3,8
2 - 3 members	32,2	33,2	23,8	22,5	15,8
4 - 5 members	51,0	49,1	39,0	38,9	30,4
6 - 9 members	77,1	74,6	64,2	66,9	56,5
10+ members	93,0	91,0	84,4	85,3	83,9
	Poverty Gap (P1)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**27,0**	**27,1**	**19,7**	**20,3**	**14,4**
1 member	2,8	2,6	2,3	1,6	1,0
2 - 3 members	10,9	11,6	7,5	7,2	4,4
4 - 5 members	21,1	21,2	15,1	14,7	9,7
6 - 9 members	38,7	39,2	29,3	30,6	21,6
10+ members	54,5	55,7	44,7	46,3	41,5
	Severity of Poverty (P2)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**15,6**	**16,1**	**10,8**	**11,2**	**7,3**
1 member	1,1	1,0	0,9	0,5	0,4
2 - 3 members	5,0	5,4	3,4	3,2	1,8
4 - 5 members	11,1	11,5	7,7	7,3	4,3
6 - 9 members	22,9	24,1	16,5	17,3	10,8
10+ members	36,2	38,2	27,5	29,5	24,2

Table 3.8.1 shows that individuals living in single-person households had notably lower poverty gaps compared to those living in larger households. The poverty gap for households with 10 or more members fluctuated between 2006 and 2023. The same pattern is observed for households with 6 to 9 members; however, the size of the drop was larger.

In 2006, the poverty gap for individuals living in households with 4 to 5 members stood at 21,1%, which rose slightly to 21,2% in 2009, then fell to 15,1% in 2011, before declining further to 9,7% in 2023. For individuals residing in households with 2 to 3 members, the poverty gap stood at 10,9% in 2006, then peaked at 11,6% in 2009, and later dropped to 4,4% in 2023. Meanwhile, the poverty gap for single-member households decreased marginally from 2,8% in 2006 to 1,0% in 2023.

Table 3.8.2: Poverty shares by household size (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

Household size	Poverty shares				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**100,0**	**100,0**	**100,0**	**100,0**	**100,0**
1 member	1,0	0,9	0,9	0,7	0,6
2 - 3 members	11,9	13,7	11,6	11,1	9,8
4 - 5 members	28,3	27,7	27,8	26,1	26,0
6 - 9 members	41,9	42,3	45,7	44,3	41,9
10+ members	16,9	15,4	14,0	17,7	21,7

Table 3.8.2 shows that the poverty share of individuals residing in households with 10 or more members decreased between 2006 and 2011 from 16,9% to 14,0%, and later increased to 21,7% in 2023. Individuals living in households with 6 to 9 members had a poverty share of 41,9% in 2006, which increased to a peak of 45,7% in 2011, before declining back to 41,9% in 2023. The share of poverty for households with 4 to 5 members saw a slight decrease of 2,3 percentage points, from 28,3% in 2006 to 26,0% in 2023. Individuals from smaller households, that is households with 3 or fewer members, represented the smallest share of poverty, accounting for 9,8% (for 2 to 3 members) and 0,6% (for single-person) in 2023.

3.9 – Poverty and metropolitan municipality

This section examines individual poverty in metropolitan municipalities (metros) from 2009 to 2023. Unlike earlier sections in this chapter that focused on the period between 2006 and 2023, the analysis of poverty measures in metros is limited to 2009 onwards due to the unavailability of data for 2006.

Table 3.9.1: Poverty measures by metropolitan municipality (LBPL) (2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

	Poverty Headcount (P0)			
	2009	2011	2015	2023
All metros	**33,9**	**27,3**	**30,1**	**27,7**
City of Cape Town	30,9	19,7	25,8	19,1
Buffalo City	*	*	39,0	33,3
Nelson Mandela Bay	40,4	42,0	40,8	30,2
eThekwini Metropolitan	39,5	40,4	41,3	40,7
Mangaung Metropolitan	*	33,0	28,5	30,1
City of Johannesburg	32,6	26,7	23,4	24,8
Ekurhuleni	32,8	22,8	30,2	24,7
City of Tshwane	30,8	19,9	26,0	30,0
	Poverty Gap (P1)			
	2009	2011	2015	2023
All metros	**13,0**	**10,1**	**10,8**	**9,8**
City of Cape Town	12,0	6,0	9,0	6,4
Buffalo City	*	*	14,1	11,0
Nelson Mandela Bay	15,4	18,1	16,4	9,9
eThekwini Metropolitan	15,8	16,7	16,9	16,4
Mangaung Metropolitan	*	12,1	9,8	9,8
City of Johannesburg	12,6	9,7	7,6	8,5
Ekurhuleni	11,4	7,3	9,8	8,4
City of Tshwane	11,8	7,6	9,3	10,2
	Severity of Poverty (P2)			
	2009	2011	2015	2023
All metros	**6,6**	**5,1**	**5,3**	**4,7**
City of Cape Town	6,2	2,5	4,2	3,0
Buffalo City	*	*	6,9	4,9
Nelson Mandela Bay	7,6	9,5	8,8	4,4
eThekwini Metropolitan	8,3	9,2	8,9	8,6
Mangaung Metropolitan	*	5,9	4,4	4,5
City of Johannesburg	6,6	5,0	3,5	3,9
Ekurhuleni	5,3	3,5	4,6	4,0
City of Tshwane	6,0	3,8	4,3	4,9

** The estimates for Buffalo City in 2009 and 2011, as well as for Mangaung in 2009 cannot be derived in those years due to geographic boundary changes.*

Table 3.9.1 shows that individual poverty in metropolitan areas declined steadily, although progress was uneven across municipalities. The poverty headcount for all metropolitan municipalities decreased from 33,9% in 2009 to 27,7% in 2023. Improvements were observed in the City of Cape Town, City of Johannesburg, Ekurhuleni, and Nelson Mandela Bay, which all recorded notable reductions across all three poverty measures between 2009 and 2023. The City of Cape Town had the lowest poverty rates at 19,1% in 2023, down from 30,9% in 2009.

In contrast, eThekwini metro had persistent poverty challenges, recording some of the highest poverty headcounts and gaps throughout the period. City of Tshwane showed only slight improvements in most of the measures of poverty between 2009 and 2023.

Generally, the data indicates that while metropolitan municipalities in South Africa had experienced meaningful reductions in poverty, considerable disparities remain between these municipalities. These findings highlight the need for targeted, localised policy interventions to address persistent poverty in metros that lag behind.

Table 3.9.2: Poverty shares by metropolitan municipality (LBPL) (2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

Metropolitan municipality	Poverty Shares			
	2009	2011	2015	2023
All metros	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**
City of Cape Town	18,4	14,1	16,1	12,7
Buffalo City	*	*	4,9	3,7
Nelson Mandela Bay	8,0	8,6	7,0	5,1
eThekwini	22,1	26,0	23,7	22,9
Mangaung	*	5,7	3,2	3,5
City of Johannesburg	22,3	21,3	17,0	21,2
Ekurhuleni	17,1	14,1	16,4	14,4
City of Tshwane	12,2	10,2	11,6	16,5

** The estimates for Buffalo City in 2009 and 2011, as well as for Mangaung in 2009 cannot be derived in those years due to geographic boundary changes.*

Table 3.9.2 shows poverty share by metropolitan municipality between 2009 and 2023. In 2023, eThekwini and City of Johannesburg had the largest poverty shares with more than two out of every five poor metro-dwelling persons living in those metros. The poverty shares for Buffalo City, Nelson Mandela Bay and Mangaung had the lowest poverty shares in 2023 accounting for a combined 12,3% of all poor metro-dwelling individuals.

3.10 – Summary of findings on individual poverty

Status in 2023

- Approximately 37,9% of the population were living below the LBPL in 2023. While this represents a notable decrease from the 2006 level, poverty continued to affect a significant portion of the population.
- Although poverty levels decreased for both sexes in 2023, females continued to experience higher poverty levels than their male counterparts, at 39,7% compared to 36,0%, respectively.
- Poverty in South Africa remained predominantly concentrated among black Africans with a headcount of 43,8% in 2023, followed by coloureds at 24,6%. The white and Indian/Asian populations experienced significantly lower, but rising rates.
- Children continued to experience the highest headcount at 49,1%, indicating that almost half of all children in South Africa were living in poverty in 2023. Poverty declined steadily with age, reaching the lowest level among those aged 65 years and older at 25,3%.
- Poverty headcounts for all educational categories declined in 2023, except for the higher education group which saw a slight increase. Adults with no formal education had the highest headcount at 52,7%.
- KwaZulu-Natal, (49,6%) North West (49,2%), and Eastern Cape (48,2%) ranked among the provinces with the highest poverty levels in South Africa when measured by the LBPL.
- Rural areas consistently had higher poverty headcounts compared to urban areas. In 2023, the headcount in rural areas was 54,7%, which was nearly double the 29,1% recorded in urban areas.
- Individuals living in households with 10 or more members experienced the highest poverty headcount at 83,9%, while those living in households with 3 or fewer members had the lowest headcounts in 2023.
- In metros, the highest poverty headcounts were recorded in eThekwini metro (40,7%) and Buffalo City (33,3%) in 2023.

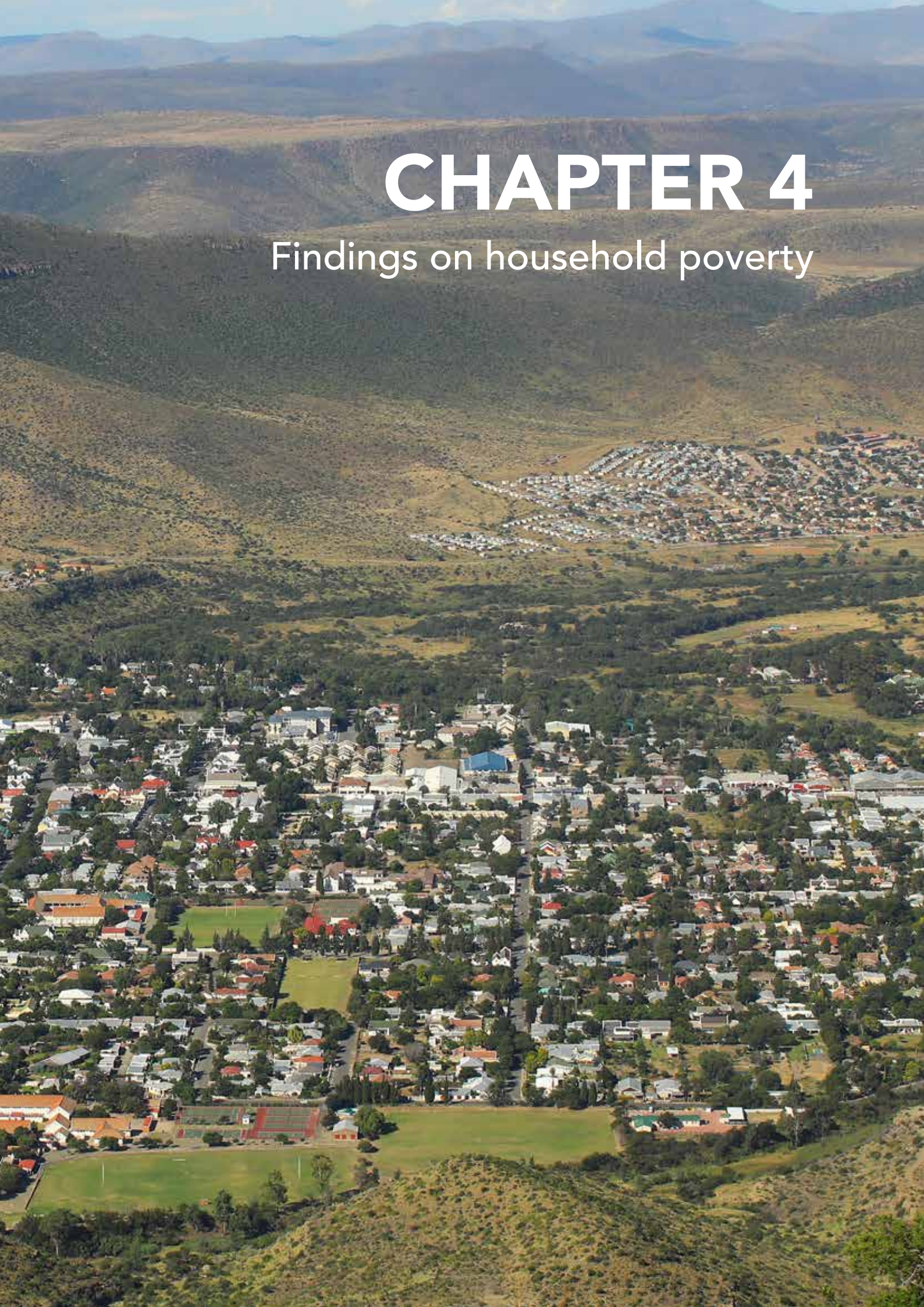
Changes from 2015

- Between 2015 and 2023, South Africa experienced a notable decline in the poverty headcount as measured by the LBPL, dropping from 46,7% to 37,9% (an 8,8 percentage point reduction).
- Although the poverty headcount for black Africans declined from 54,5% in 2015 to 43,8% in 2023, this group continued to make up an overwhelming share of the population living in poverty. Notably, poverty headcounts for white and Indian/Asian population groups increased between 2015 and 2023, despite their overall share of poverty remaining low relative to their population size.
- The proportion of the population living in poverty decreased across all age groups between 2015 and 2023, with the largest decline registered among older persons at 11,9 percentage points. Although the headcount for children declined, their poverty share remained constant at 43,1%.

- Between 2015 and 2023, adults with some primary or primary as their highest level of education experienced the largest drop in poverty headcounts at 14,2 and 14,7 percentage points, respectively.
- At a provincial level, the largest declines in the headcount between 2015 and 2023 were observed in Limpopo (18,5 percentage points), Eastern Cape (14,9 percentage points) and Mpumalanga (12,6 percentage points). Gauteng was the only province that experienced an increase in their headcount rising from 26,3% in 2015 to 26,5% in 2023.
- Between 2015 and 2023, both rural and urban areas experienced declines in poverty, with rural areas showing a much steeper decrease.
- Although larger households experienced higher levels of poverty, individuals living in households with 6 to 9 members actually reported the largest decline in poverty between 2015 and 2023, dropping by 10,4 percentage points from 66,9% to 56,5%.

Changes from 2006

- Poverty levels for both males and females declined between 2006 and 2023, with females consistently recording higher levels of poverty than their male counterparts.
- Black Africans and coloureds experienced the largest declines in poverty between 2006 and 2023 dropping by 23,5 and 18,2 percentage points, respectively. Meanwhile, the white population recorded a slight 0,8 percentage point increase, rising from 0,6% to 1,4% over the same period.
- Despite the fact that the proportion of the child population living in poverty dropped by 20,3 percentage points between 2006 and 2023, child poverty remained very high at 49,1% in 2023.
- Poverty among adults with no formal schooling saw the largest decline, dropping from 77,5% in 2006 to 52,7% in 2023 (a 24,8 percentage point reduction), followed by adults with some primary schooling (22,7 percentage points) and primary schooling (20,0 percentage points). Adults with higher education were the only group to record an increase in poverty (a 1,4 percentage point rise) over the same period.
- Provincially, Mpumalanga experienced the largest decline in poverty since 2006, dropping from 67,0% to 38,4% in 2023 (28,6 percentage points), followed by Limpopo (27,5 percentage points) and Northern Cape (22,3 percentage points). The provinces that recorded the smallest reductions between 2006 and 2023 were Gauteng (7,2 percentage points) and North West (10,0 percentage points).
- From 2006 to 2023, poverty headcounts decreased for all household sizes. Individuals in smaller households tend to have lower poverty rates compared to those in larger households; however, households with more members generally experienced larger reductions in poverty over this period.



CHAPTER 4

Findings on household poverty

4.1 – Introduction

In this chapter, household poverty levels and trends are discussed by sex, population group, age, and educational status of the household head, as well as by province, settlement type, household size and metropolitan municipalities between 2006 and 2023.

Table 4.1.1 shows the poverty incidence at a household level and the number of poor households for each poverty line. The percentage of poor households declined from 42,1% to 22,9% between 2006 and 2023 based on the LBPL. According to this poverty line, both the incidence of poverty and the number of poor households declined. During the same period, households living in extreme poverty (below the FPL) declined from 16,5% to 8,7%, and the number of extremely poor households dropped from 2,1 to 1,9 million. According to the UBPL, the percentage of poor households declined from 67,4% to 50,4%; however, the number of poor households increased from 8,4 million in 2006 to 10,7 million in 2023.

Table 4.1.1: Poverty incidence at a household level and the number of poor households (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

Poverty incidence and number of poor households	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
Percentage of the households that is UBPL poor	67,4%	65,8%	59,1%	59,1%	50,4%
Number of UBPL poor households (in millions)	8,4	9,4	8,9	10,0	10,7
Percentage of the households that is below the LBPL poor	42,1%	41,0%	31,9%	31,8%	22,9%
Number of LBPL poor households (in millions)	5,3	5,8	4,8	5,4	4,9
Percentage of the households living in extreme poverty (below FPL)	16,5%	19,4%	12,1%	12,8%	8,7%
Number of extremely poor households (in millions)	2,1	2,8	1,8	2,2	1,9

4.2 – Household poverty and sex

This section discusses the incidence of household poverty by sex of the household head between 2006 and 2023. Figure 4.2.1 shows that female-headed households had their incidence of poverty decrease from 56,0% in 2006 to 29,8% in 2023, a significant decrease of 26,2 percentage points. Meanwhile, for male-headed households, the incidence of household poverty dropped from 33,3% to 17,6% over the same period, representing a 15,7 percentage point decrease. This indicates a significant improvement in narrowing the gender gap in household poverty; however, female-headed households are still generally worse off than those headed by males.

Figure 4.2.1. Incidence of household poverty by sex of the household head (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

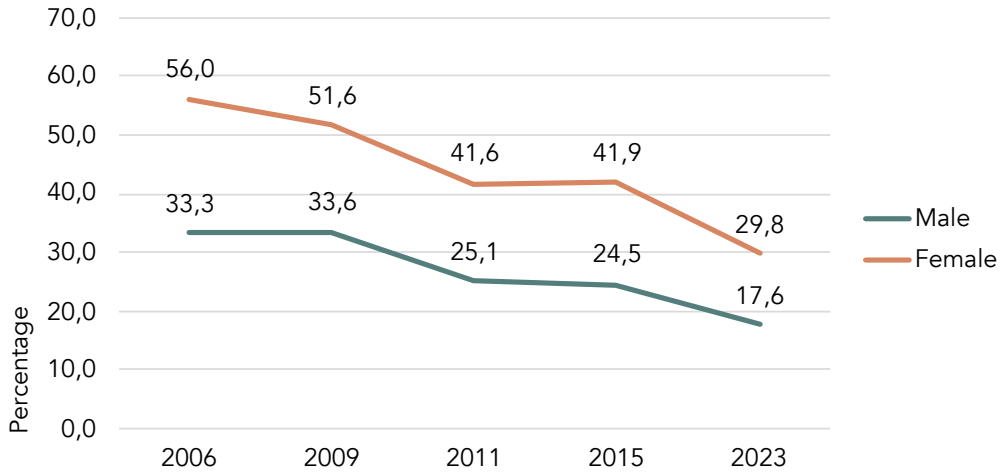


Table 4.2.1: Household poverty measures by sex of the household head (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

	Incidence of Poverty (P0)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**42,1**	**41,0**	**31,9**	**31,8**	**22,9**
Male	33,3	33,6	25,1	24,5	17,6
Female	56,0	51,6	41,6	41,9	29,8
	Poverty Gap (P1)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**17,9**	**17,8**	**12,4**	**12,3**	**7,7**
Male	13,5	13,8	9,3	8,9	5,8
Female	24,8	23,5	16,8	17,1	10,3
	Severity of Poverty (P2)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**9,7**	**9,9**	**6,4**	**6,4**	**3,6**
Male	7,1	7,5	4,7	4,4	2,6
Female	13,8	13,4	8,8	9,1	4,9

According to Table 4.2.1, the poverty gap for female-headed households decreased from 24,8% to 16,8% between 2006 and 2011, and thereafter, increased to 17,1% in 2015, before declining to 10,3% in 2023. Meanwhile, the poverty gap for male-headed households slightly increased by 0,3 percentage points between 2006 and 2009, from 13,5% to 13,8%, respectively. Between 2011 and 2015, there was an inverse relationship in the poverty gap between male- and female-headed households, with the gap for male-headed households decreasing by 0,4 percentage points, while it increased by 0,3 percentage points for female-headed households. Female-headed households continued to experience deeper levels of poverty than their male counterparts.

Figure 4.2.2: Household poverty shares by sex of the household head (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

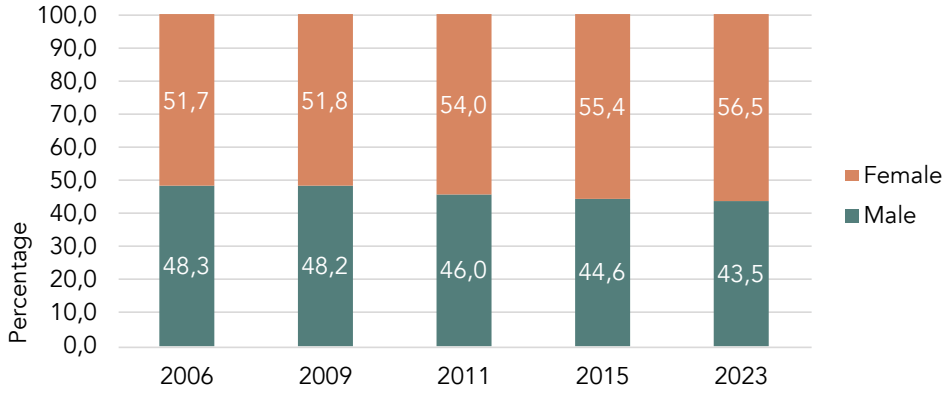


Table 4.2.2: Household poverty shares by sex of the household head (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

Sex	Poverty Shares				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**100,0**	**100,0**	**100,0**	**100,0**	**100,0**
Male	48,3	48,2	46,0	44,6	43,5
Female	51,7	51,8	54,0	55,4	56,5

Figure 4.2.2 and Table 4.2.2 show that there were more poor female-headed households than poor male-headed households between 2006 and 2023. Female-headed households accounted for a bigger share of poverty, increasing from 51,7% in 2006 to 56,5% in 2023 (a 4,8 percentage point increase), as compared to their male counterparts who saw a 4,8 percentage point decrease from 48,3% to 43,5% during the same period.

4.3 – Household poverty and population group

Across all population groups, poverty levels declined between 2006 and 2023, although the rate of decline varied. Black African- and coloured-headed households saw the most noticeable improvements in their incidence of poverty, while for Indian/Asian- and white-headed households it remained consistently low throughout.

Figure 4.3.1: Incidence of household poverty by population group of the household head (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

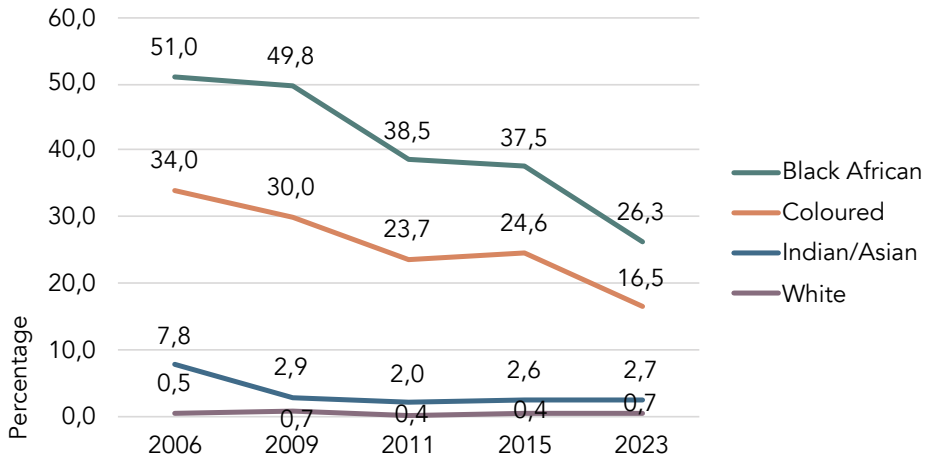


Figure 4.3.1 highlights the incidence of poverty by population group of the household head. Black African-headed households experienced the highest poverty rates in the country; however, their poverty levels saw the biggest improvements dropping from 51,0% in 2006 to 26,3% in 2023, with the most significant decline recoded between 2011 and 2023 from 38,5% to 26,3%. Coloured-headed households also showed a steady decline across all years, with the incidence of household poverty dropping from 34,0% in 2006 to 16,5% in 2023. Indian/Asian-headed households consistently had low poverty levels, with the sharpest decline observed between 2006 (7,8%) and 2009 (2,9%); from 2009 onwards, these levels remained stable at below 3%. White-headed households experienced very low poverty levels overall, with minor fluctuations. The slight rise from 0,5% in 2006 to 0,7% in 2023 was very minor and does not indicate a meaningful change.

Table 4.3.1: Household poverty measures by population group of the household head (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

	Incidence of Poverty (P0)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**42,1**	**41,0**	**31,9**	**31,8**	**22,9**
Black African	51,0	49,8	38,5	37,5	26,3
Coloured	34,0	30,0	23,7	24,6	16,5
Indian/Asian	7,8	2,9	2,0	2,6	2,7
White	0,5	0,7	0,4	0,4	0,7
	Poverty Gap (P1)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**17,9**	**17,8**	**12,4**	**12,3**	**7,7**
Black African	21,9	21,9	15,1	14,7	9,0
Coloured	13,0	11,0	7,9	8,1	4,8
Indian/Asian	1,7	0,4	0,5	0,5	0,6
White	0,1	0,2	0,1	0,1	0,2
	Severity of Poverty (P2)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**9,7**	**9,9**	**6,4**	**6,4**	**3,6**
Black African	12,0	12,2	7,9	7,7	4,2
Coloured	6,5	5,4	3,6	3,8	2,0
Indian/Asian	0,8	0,1	0,2	0,2	0,3
White	0,0	0,1	0,0	0,0	0,0

Table 4.3.1 shows that the poverty gap generally declined between 2006 and 2023. By 2023, the poverty gap at a national level was less than half of what it was in 2006. This indicates that LBPL poor households are notably closer to graduating out of poverty. Black African-headed households had the biggest poverty gaps across the series, but their gap reduced sharply from 21,9% in 2006 to 9,0% in 2023. Coloured-headed households experienced similar improvements, with their poverty gap dropping from 13,0% to 4,8% over the same period. The gap is now almost one-third of its level in 2006. Indian/Asian-headed households registered very low poverty gaps compared to other population groups, which remained stable below 1,0% after 2009. Meanwhile, white-headed households had stable and very low poverty gaps.

Table 4.3.2: Household poverty shares by population group of the household head (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

Population group	Poverty Shares				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**
Black African	93,1	94,1	94,2	94,2	94,8
Coloured	6,3	5,5	5,5	5,5	4,7
Indian/Asian	0,5	0,2	0,2	0,2	0,3
White	0,2	0,2	0,1	0,1	0,3

Table 4.3.2 illustrates the poverty share by population group of the household head for the years 2006, 2009, 2011, 2015, and 2023. Across all the data points, the poverty share for black African-headed households accounted for roughly 94% of all poor households. Between 2006 and 2023, their poverty share increased from 93,1% to 94,8%. The share for coloured-headed household decreased over time from 6,3% in 2006 to 4,7% in 2023; although, it remained stable at 5,5% between 2009 and 2015. Indian/Asian- and white-headed households recorded very low shares, ranging between 0,1% and 0,5% across the entire period.

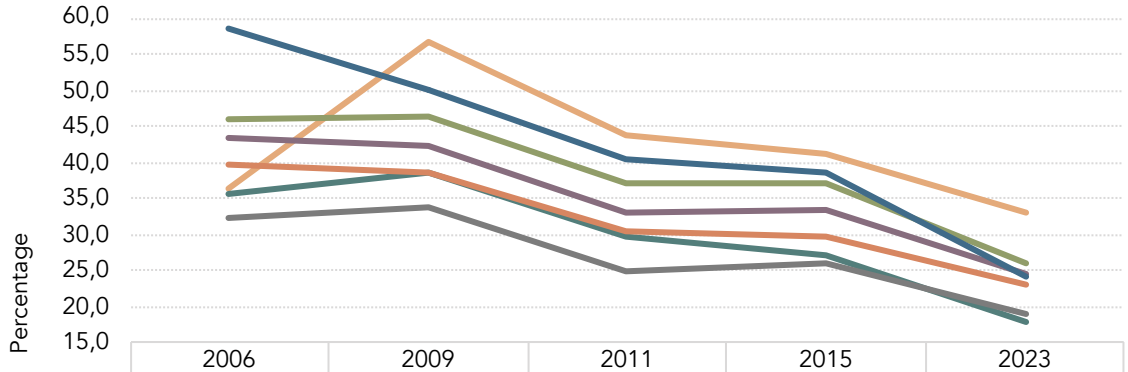
4.4 – Household poverty and age

Figures 4.4.1 and 4.4.2 illustrate trends in the incidence of household poverty by the age of the household head from 2006 to 2023 based on the LBPL. The figures show a general decline in household poverty across all age groups over this period. The most significant reduction in poverty was recorded for households headed by older persons (65+ years), while the smallest decrease was observed in those headed by children (0 to 17 years). However, this is somewhat expected given the small representation of child-headed households in the sample, and the fact that children and young people comprised the majority of poor persons in the country, as discussed in the preceding chapter.

From 2006 to 2023, similar trends in the incidence of household poverty were observed for households headed by children (0 to 17 years) and the youth (aged 18 to 24). Additionally, households headed by individuals aged 35 to 44 years and those aged 65 years and older showed a comparable declining trend in the incidence of poverty over the same period. Households headed by 25 to 34 year olds and 55 to 64 year olds depicted almost a similar trend in the proportion of the people living in poverty from 2006 to 2023, although the poverty incidence for the 55 to 64 age group remained constant at 37,2% between 2011 and 2015. For households headed by those aged 45 to 54 years, the poverty incidence declined between 2006 and 2011, followed by an increase in 2015, before declining again in 2023.

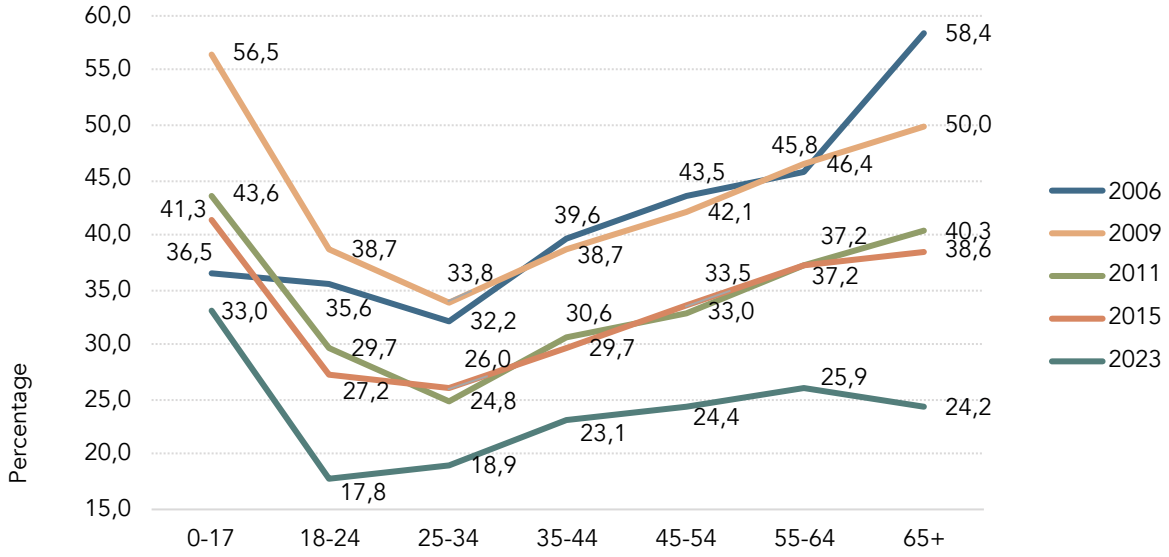
Households headed by 18 to 24 year olds registered an 8,7% increase in poverty between 2006 and 2009 (from 35,6% to 38,7%), which gradually dropped to 17,8% in 2023. A different picture emerged for households headed by 45 to 54 year olds, with poverty incidence declining from 2006 (43,5%) to 2011 (33,0%), followed by a slight increase in 2015 (33,5%), and a decrease in 2023 (24,4%). The poverty incidence for households headed by individuals in their early old age (ages 55 to 64 years) registered a decrease of 19,9 percentage points (from 45,8% to 25,9%) between 2006 and 2023.

Figure 4.4.1: Incidence of household poverty by age of the household head (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)



	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
0-17	36,5	56,5	43,6	41,3	33,0
18-24	35,6	38,7	29,7	27,2	17,8
25-34	32,2	33,8	24,8	26,0	18,9
35-44	39,6	38,7	30,6	29,7	23,1
45-54	43,5	42,1	33,0	33,5	24,4
55-64	45,8	46,4	37,2	37,2	25,9
65+	58,4	50,0	40,3	38,6	24,2

Figure 4.4.2: Incidence of household poverty by age of the household head (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)



Between 2006 and 2015, households headed by those aged 25 to 34 years registered the lowest levels of poverty. These households also recorded the lowest poverty gaps for 2006, 2009, 2011, and 2015 at 12,4%, 13,7%, 8,8%, and 9,1%, respectively. In 2023, they had the second smallest poverty gap at 6,3%, after households headed by those aged 18 to 24 years, which recorded a gap of 4,9%. Given their close proximity to the LBPL, these small gaps suggest that these households were not far from escaping poverty. Similarly, these households (25 to 34 years) had the lowest severity of poverty for all the data points, except in 2015 and 2023 when the smallest severity of poverty was registered for households headed by youth (18 to 24 years). Child-headed households (0 to17 years) had a higher poverty gap and severity of poverty in 2023.

Table 4.4.1: Household poverty measures by age of the household head (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

	Incidence of Poverty (P0)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**42,1**	**41,0**	**31,9**	**31,8**	**22,9**
0 – 17	36,5	56,5	43,6	41,3	33,0
18 – 24	35,6	38,7	29,7	27,2	17,8
25 – 34	32,2	33,8	24,8	26,0	18,9
35 – 44	39,6	38,7	30,6	29,7	23,1
45 – 54	43,5	42,1	33,0	33,5	24,4
55 – 64	45,8	46,4	37,2	37,2	25,9
65+	58,4	50,0	40,3	38,6	24,2
	Poverty Gap (P1)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**17,9**	**17,8**	**12,4**	**12,3**	**7,7**
0 – 17	14,4	25,8	15,7	15,1	11,8
18 – 24	13,8	14,9	10,6	9,2	4,9
25 – 34	12,4	13,7	8,8	9,1	6,3
35 – 44	16,8	16,6	11,6	11,6	7,8
45 – 54	19,1	18,6	13,6	13,4	8,3
55 – 64	20,4	21,2	14,8	14,9	9,0
65+	25,6	23,2	16,4	16,1	8,2
	Severity of Poverty (P2)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**9,8**	**9,9**	**6,4**	**6,4**	**3,6**
0 – 17	8,5	14,5	8,0	6,8	5,6
18 – 24	7,1	7,7	5,2	4,3	2,0
25 – 34	6,4	7,2	4,3	4,4	2,9
35 – 44	9,2	9,1	6,0	6,0	3,6
45 – 54	10,6	10,5	7,3	7,1	3,9
55 – 64	11,4	12,1	7,8	8,0	4,3
65+	13,9	13,2	8,6	8,6	3,8

The poverty shares by age of the household head are displayed in Figure 4.4.3 and Table 4.4.2. As observed above, child-headed households (0 to 17 years old) had the highest overall incidence of poverty in all years, except 2006, when households headed by older persons showed the highest incidence. Nonetheless, across all data points, child-headed households had the smallest share of poverty (1,0% and less) as seen in Table 4.4.2.

Households headed by individuals aged 35 to 44 years represented the largest proportion of poor households in 2009 (21,6%), 2011 (21,4%) and 2023 (25,2%). However, the largest proportion of poor households were observed for those headed by the 45 to 54 years old in 2006 (21,0%) and 2015 (21,4%). Generally, from 2006 to 2023, the share of households living in poverty declined for those headed by children (0 to 17 years), the youth (18 to 34 years) and the elderly (65+).

Figure 4.4.3: Household poverty shares by age of household head (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

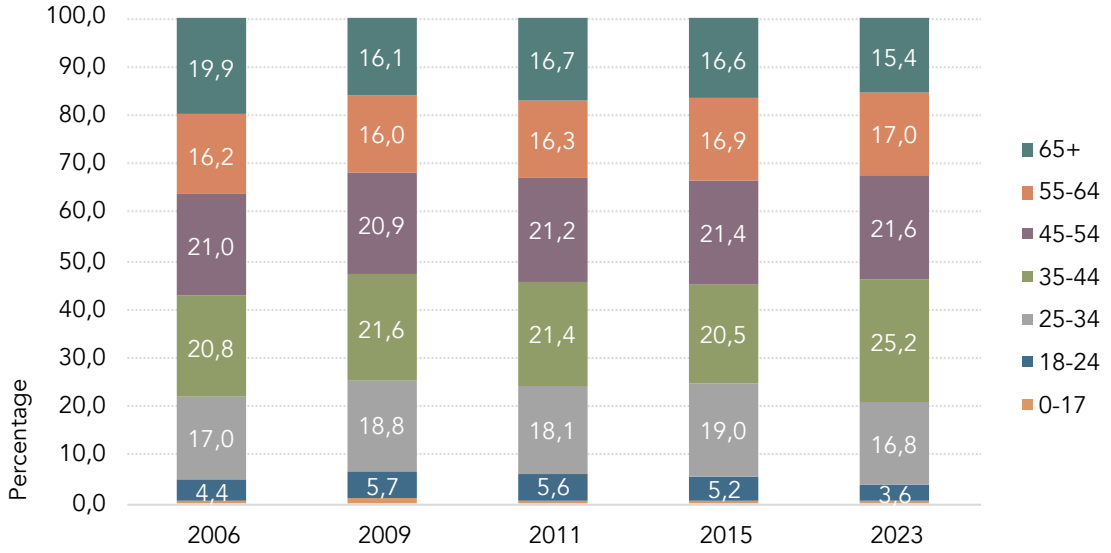


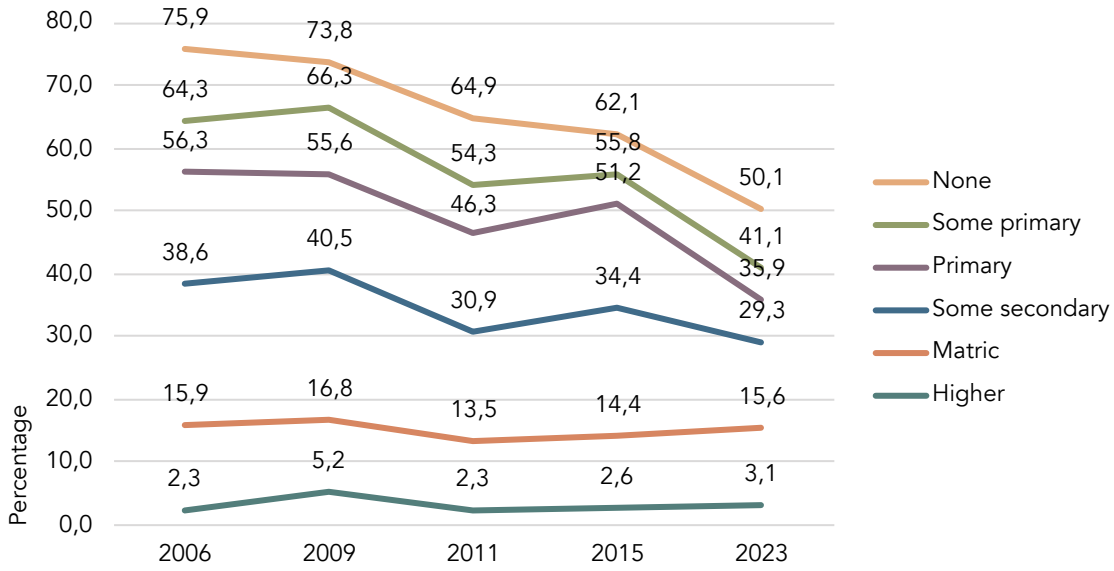
Table 4.4.2: Household poverty shares by age of the household head (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

Age group	Poverty Shares				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**
0-17	0,6	1,0	0,6	0,4	0,4
18-24	4,4	5,7	5,6	5,2	3,6
25-34	17,0	18,8	18,1	19,0	16,8
35-44	20,8	21,6	21,4	20,5	25,2
45-54	21,0	20,9	21,2	21,4	21,6
55-64	16,2	16,0	16,3	16,9	17,0
65+	19,9	16,1	16,7	16,6	15,4

4.5 – Household poverty and education

Figure 4.5.1 and Table 4.5.1 show the incidence of household poverty by level of education of the household head for periods 2006, 2009, 2011, 2015, and 2023. Nationally, the overall poverty incidence decreased from 42,2% in 2006 to 22,9% in 2023, representing a 19,3 percentage point reduction. Households headed by individuals with no formal education had the highest poverty levels across all data points in the series. However, the incidence of poverty decreased notably from 75,9% in 2006 to 50,1% by 2023. Despite the 25,8 percentage point drop, half of the households headed by individuals without a formal education were still living in poverty in 2023.

Figure 4.5.1: Incidence of household poverty by educational level of the household head (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)



The proportion of poor households headed by individuals with a matric or higher qualification showed very little change over time, with poverty incidence remaining relatively stable (except for a slight spike in 2009). Poor households headed by individuals with a matric fell marginally from 15,9% in 2006 to 15,6% in 2023, while the incidence for those with higher qualification increased slightly to 3,1% in 2023 from 2,3% in 2006.

The same trend observed in the poverty headcount shown in Chapter 3 (see Figure 3.5.1) is also reflecting in the incidence of household poverty, where poverty for households headed by individuals with some primary or some secondary education have similar fluctuating patterns. In 2006, their poverty incidence stood at 64,3% and 38,6%, respectively. These incidences of poverty increased between 2006 and 2009, and then fell between 2009 and 2011. From 2011 to 2015, they increased again, before dropping between 2015 and 2023 to 41,1% and 29,3%, respectively.

Table 4.5.1: Household poverty measures by educational level of the household head (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

	Incidence of Poverty (P0)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**42,2**	**40,9**	**31,9**	**31,8**	**22,9**
None	75,9	73,8	64,9	62,1	50,1
Some primary	64,3	66,3	54,3	55,8	41,1
Primary	56,3	55,6	46,3	51,2	35,9
Some secondary	38,6	40,5	30,9	34,4	29,3
Matric	15,9	16,8	13,5	14,4	15,6
Higher	2,3	5,2	2,3	2,6	3,1
	Poverty Gap (P1)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**17,9**	**17,8**	**12,4**	**12,3**	**7,7**
None	36,9	36,5	28,3	29,0	18,6
Some primary	28,8	30,8	22,5	23,4	15,0
Primary	23,8	23,9	18,2	21,2	13,2
Some secondary	14,5	16,0	11,0	12,2	9,7
Matric	5,1	5,9	4,2	4,3	4,8
Higher	0,6	1,7	0,8	0,7	0,8
	Severity of Poverty (P2)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**9,8**	**9,9**	**6,4**	**6,4**	**3,6**
None	21,7	21,7	15,6	16,7	9,4
Some primary	16,1	17,8	12,1	12,7	7,4
Primary	12,6	13,1	9,4	11,4	6,4
Some secondary	7,2	8,3	5,4	5,8	4,4
Matric	2,3	2,8	1,9	1,9	2,1
Higher	0,3	0,8	0,4	0,3	0,3

Households headed by individuals with no formal schooling had the largest poverty gap over the period under review and the biggest absolute decline (18,3 percentage points) between 2006 and 2023. Although this category experienced a notable decline from 36,9% to 18,6%, their poverty gap remained significantly higher than all other categories. Households headed by those with some primary education followed a similar pattern, with an initially high poverty gap of 28,8% in 2006 that decreased steadily over time to 15,0% in 2023.

The poverty gap for households headed by individuals with primary education or some secondary education rose slightly in 2009 and 2015, but fell to its lowest levels in 2023 at 13,2% and 9,7%, respectively. Meanwhile, households headed by those with matric or higher education had very small poverty gaps and remained mostly unchanged throughout the period.

Figure 4.5.2 Household poverty shares by educational level of the household head (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

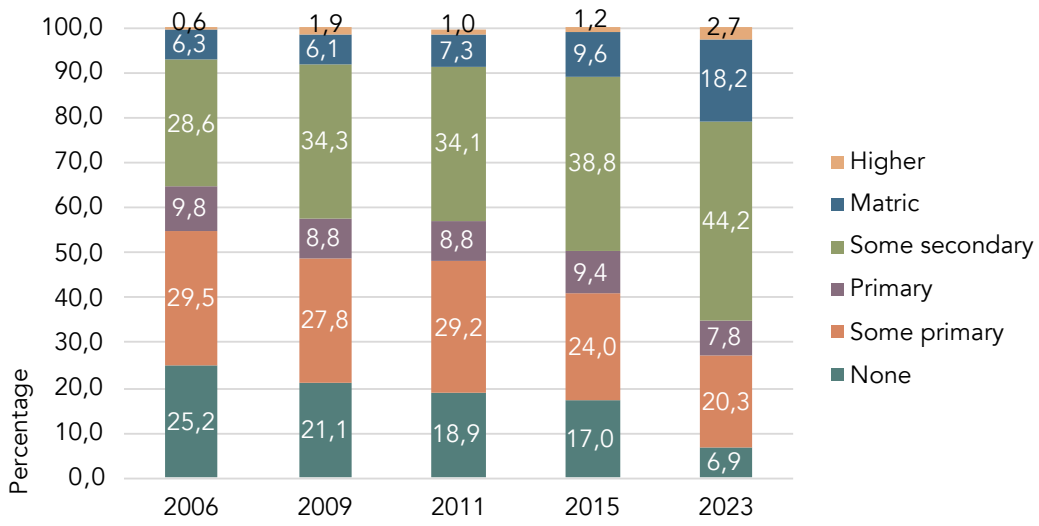


Table 4.5.2 Household poverty shares by educational level of the household head (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

Educational level	Poverty shares				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**100**	**100**	**99**	**100**	**100**
None	25,2	21,1	18,9	17,0	6,9
Some primary	29,5	27,8	29,2	24,0	20,3
Primary	9,8	8,8	8,8	9,4	7,8
Some secondary	28,6	34,3	34,1	38,8	44,2
Matric	6,3	6,1	7,3	9,6	18,2
Higher	0,6	1,9	1,0	1,2	2,7

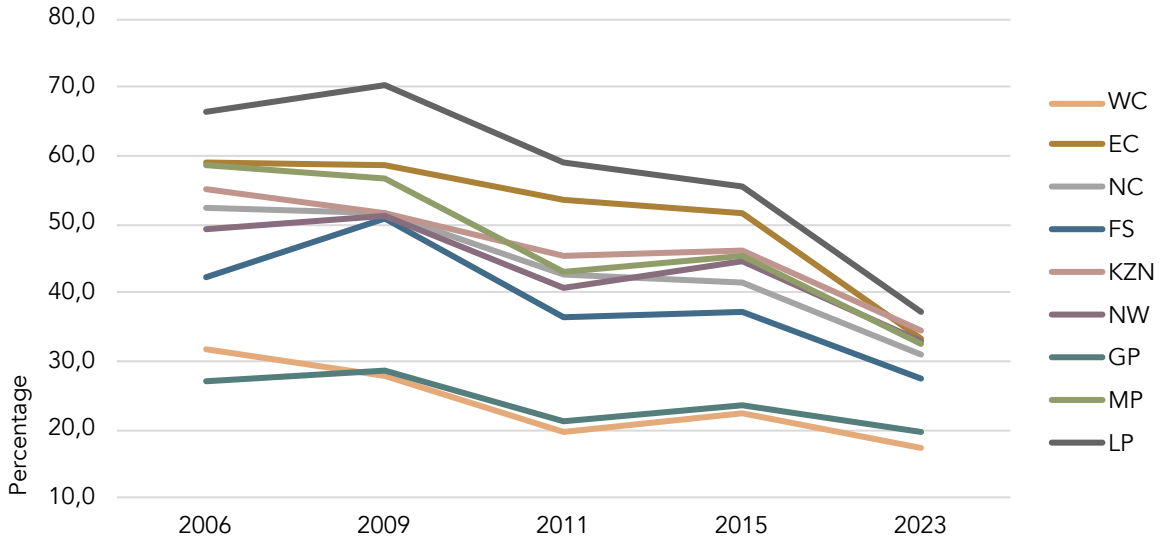
Figure 4.5.2 and Table 4.5.2 show the household poverty shares by educational level of the household head between 2006 and 2023. The shares of poverty among households headed by individuals with no formal schooling declined significantly from 25,2% in 2006 to 6,9% in 2023. Poverty among households headed by individuals with some primary education decreased from 29,5% to 20,3% over the same period. Households headed by individuals with some secondary education had a notable increase in their poverty shares, rising from 28,6% in 2006 to become the largest share in 2023 at 44,2%.

Poverty shares among households headed by individuals with only primary education remained relatively stable, changing slightly from 9,8% to 9,4% between 2006 and 2015, but dropping to 7,8% in 2023. Households headed by individuals with a matric qualification increased significantly, with their share of household poverty almost tripling from 6,3% in 2006 to 18,2% in 2023. Meanwhile, households headed by individuals with higher qualifications remained the least vulnerable, though their shares among the poor increased marginally from 0,6% in 2006 to 2,7% in 2023.

4.6 – Household poverty and province

Figure 4.6.1 shows the percentage of households living in poverty by province between 2006 and 2023. Between 2006 and 2023, Limpopo had the highest incidence of household poverty countrywide; however, it did record a massive decrease from 60,0% in 2006 to 31,2% in 2023. North West province had the second largest proportion of households that lived below the LBPL at 29,6% in 2023, followed by KwaZulu-Natal at 29,1%.

Figure 4.6.1: Incidence of household poverty by province (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)



The incidence of poverty for Eastern Cape households showed a steady decrease between 2006 and 2023, starting from 55,2% in 2006 before finally dropping to 28,6% in 2023. The proportion of households living below the LBPL residing in Gauteng declined by 30,7% (7,1 percentage points), while the incidence of poverty for Western Cape households decreased by 49,2% (12,9 percentage points). Between 2006 and 2023, households living in Limpopo saw the largest decline in their incidence of poverty at 28,8 percentage points from 60,0% in 2006 to 31,2% in 2023. Mpumalanga experienced the second largest decline of 28,3 percentage points from 54,1% in 2006 to 25,8% in 2023. The third largest reduction in the incidence of poverty occurred in the Eastern Cape decreasing by 26,6 percentage points.

Table 4.6.1: Household poverty measures by province (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

	Incidence of Poverty (P0)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**42,1**	**41,0**	**31,9**	**31,8**	**22,9**
Western Cape	26,2	23,0	15,7	18,0	13,3
Eastern Cape	55,2	54,3	47,8	46,2	28,6
Northern Cape	47,7	47,8	37,5	35,9	27,9
Free State	37,7	45,5	30,8	30,1	22,9
KwaZulu-Natal	51,2	47,4	39,9	41,1	29,1
North West	44,8	45,1	34,5	36,8	29,6
Gauteng	23,1	24,0	16,9	17,8	16,0
Mpumalanga	54,1	52,1	37,7	38,5	25,8
Limpopo	60,0	66,3	53,2	48,3	31,2
	Poverty Gap (P1)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**17,9**	**17,8**	**12,4**	**12,3**	**7,7**
Western Cape	9,2	8,1	4,7	5,6	4,0
Eastern Cape	24,5	25,0	19,6	19,8	9,5
Northern Cape	21,4	20,3	14,1	13,4	10,2
Free State	14,6	18,8	11,6	10,7	6,9
KwaZulu-Natal	24,1	22,0	16,4	16,7	10,7
North West	19,1	19,1	14,0	14,4	11,4
Gauteng	7,3	8,3	5,4	5,6	5,2
Mpumalanga	23,7	23,1	14,0	15,2	8,3
Limpopo	27,8	33,7	23,1	21,3	9,9
	Severity of Poverty (P2)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**9.7**	**9.9**	**6.4**	**6.4**	**3.6**
Western Cape	4.5	3.9	2.0	2.4	1.8
Eastern Cape	13.4	14.2	10.4	10.8	4.4
Northern Cape	12.1	10.8	7.0	6.8	5.0
Free State	7.3	9.7	5.7	5.1	3.0
KwaZulu-Natal	14.0	12.7	8.8	8.9	5.2
North West	10.4	10.4	7.3	7.5	5.8
Gauteng	3.3	4.0	2.5	2.5	2.3
Mpumalanga	13.3	13.0	6.9	7.9	3.6
Limpopo	15.8	20.4	12.8	12.0	4.4

Based on Table 4.6.1, Limpopo, Eastern Cape, and KwaZulu-Natal had the highest poverty gaps in 2006. This was also the case for households living below the LBPL in these three provinces when measured using the incidence of poverty. In 2006, impoverished households in Limpopo were the most distant from the LBPL at 27,8%, followed by Eastern Cape and KwaZulu-Natal at 24,5% and 24,1%, respectively.

In 2023, Limpopo and the Eastern Cape moved out of the top three, while poverty-stricken households in the Northern Cape and North West entered the top three at 10,2% and 11,4%, respectively. It is also worth noting that poor households in KwaZulu-Natal remained second position at 10,7%.

Both Limpopo and Mpumalanga registered a decline in their poverty gaps from 27,8% to 9,9% and 23,7% to 8,3%, respectively between 2006 and 2023. The poverty gap for poor households in the Eastern Cape also showed an improvement decreasing by 61,2% (or 15,0 percentage points) from 24,5% in 2006 to 9,5% in 2023, while Northern Cape and Free State declined from 21,4% to 10,2% and 14,6% to 6,9%, respectively.

Between 2015 and 2023, poor households in Limpopo had the largest reduction in their poverty gap dropping from 21,3% in 2015 to 9,9% in 2023, while Eastern Cape households dropped by 51,9% (or 10,2 percentage points), followed by households in Mpumalanga declining by 45,5% (or 6,9 percentage points).

In 2006, poor households in Gauteng and Western Cape were the closest to the LBPL at 7,3% and 9,2% respectively. In 2023, the two provinces still has the smallest poverty gaps, but they swapped positions with the Western Cape now closest to the LBPL at 4,0% compared to 5,2% for Gauteng.

Figure 4.6.2: Household poverty shares by province (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

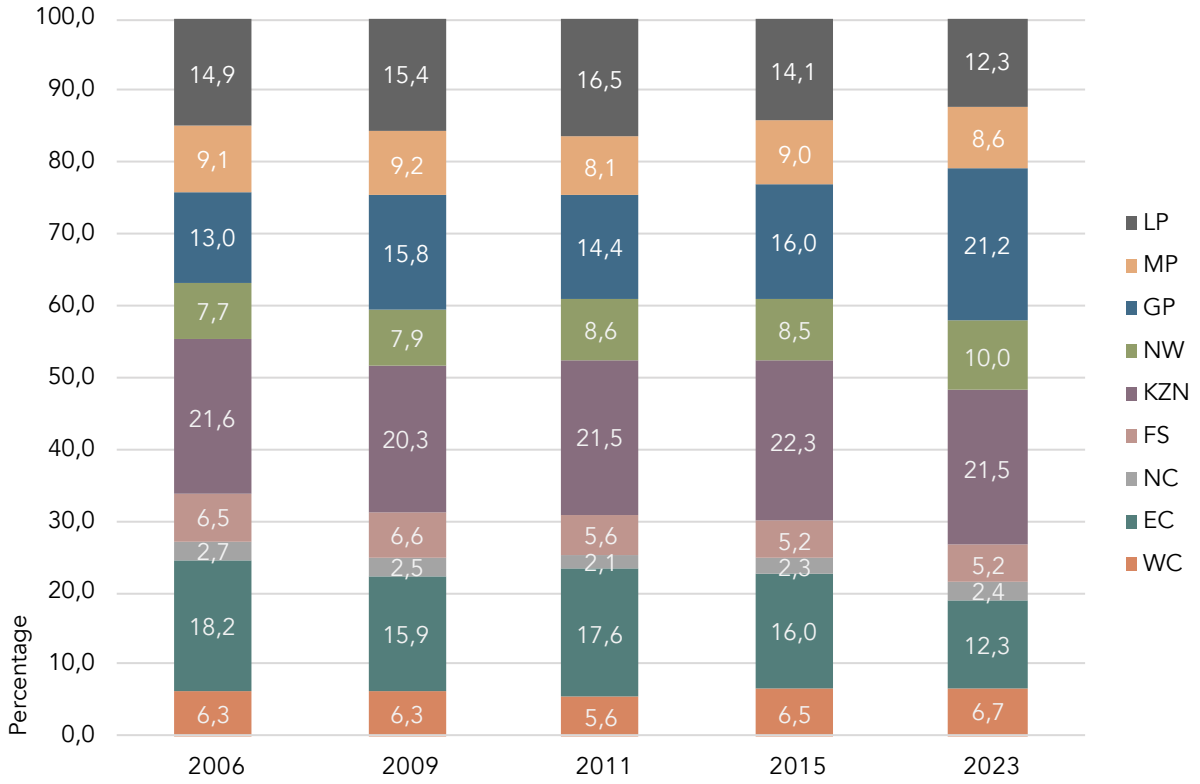


Table 4.6.2: Household poverty share by province (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

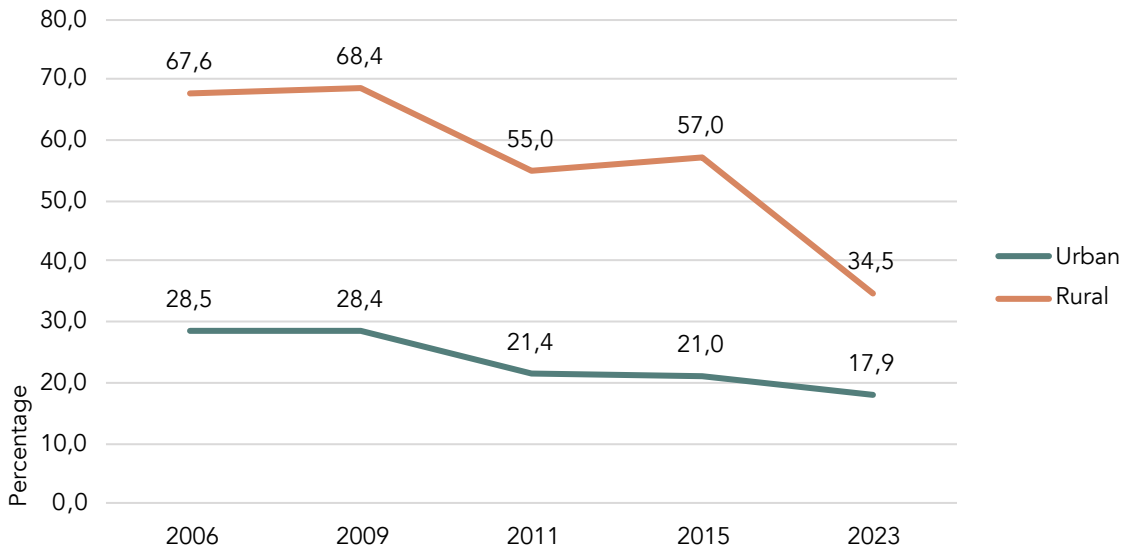
Province	Poverty Shares				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**
Western Cape	6,3	6,3	5,6	6,5	6,7
Eastern Cape	18,2	15,9	17,6	16,0	12,3
Northern Cape	2,7	2,5	2,1	2,3	2,4
Free State	6,5	6,6	5,6	5,2	5,2
KwaZulu-Natal	21,6	20,3	21,5	22,3	21,5
North West	7,7	7,9	8,6	8,5	10,0
Gauteng	13,0	15,8	14,4	16,0	21,2
Mpumalanga	9,1	9,2	8,1	9,0	8,6
Limpopo	14,9	15,4	16,5	14,1	12,3

The share of poverty for households living below the LBPL by province is shown in Figure 4.6.2 and Table 4.6.2. KwaZulu-Natal and Gauteng had the highest shares of poverty in 2023 with more than two out of every five poor households residing in these two provinces. However, while KZN's share has been somewhat stable over the five data points at roughly 22%, Gauteng's share has notably increased from 13,0% in 2006 to 21,2% in 2023. Poverty is increasingly concentrated in Gauteng driven by population growth and migration. The share of poor households was lowest in Northern Cape (2,4%), Free State (5,2%), and Western Cape (6,7%) in 2023.

4.7 – Household poverty and settlement type

Figure 4.7.1 presents the differences in the incidence of poverty between rural and urban households. The incidence of poverty was significantly higher in rural settlements as compared to their urban counterparts. Households living in rural settlements showed a substantial overall decrease in poverty, with the exceptions of a slight rise to 68,4% in 2009 and another increase to 57,0% in 2015. Despite these temporary increases, there was a noticeable decline of 13,4 percentage points between 2009 and 2011, and 22,4 percentage points between 2015 and 2023. Overall, poverty in rural areas dropped from 67,6% in 2006 to 34,5% in 2023. For urban areas, the incidence of poverty also decreased, but not at the same rate of poor rural households.

Figure 4.7.1: Incidence of household poverty by settlement type (LPBL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)



Poverty levels in urban households steadily decreased between 2006 and 2023 from 28,5% to 17,9%, which translates into a 37,2% reduction of 10,6 percentage points. From 2015 to 2023, there was a sharp decline in the incidence of poverty among rural households from 57,0% to 34,5%, a decrease of 22,4 percentage points. Meanwhile, the drop observed in urban households during the same period was only a 3,2 percentage point decrease.

Table 4.7.1: Household poverty measures by settlement type (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

	Incidence of Poverty (P0)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**42,1**	**41,0**	**31,9**	**31,8**	**22,9**
Urban	28,5	28,4	21,4	21,0	17,9
Rural	67,6	68,4	55,0	57,0	34,5
	Poverty Gap (P1)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**17,9**	**17,8**	**12,4**	**12,3**	**7,7**
Urban	10,3	10,7	7,4	7,0	5,8
Rural	32,0	33,3	23,4	24,8	12,2
	Severity of Poverty (P2)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**9,7**	**9,9**	**6,4**	**6,4**	**3,6**
Urban	5,1	5,4	3,5	3,3	2,6
Rural	18,5	19,6	12,8	13,7	5,9

Table 4.7.1 shows household poverty measures by settlement type between 2006 and 2023. Even though the poverty gap for urban households is more than double that of households in rural areas, the biggest improvement in their incidence of poverty was experienced by households in rural areas. Rural households improved the most as severity of poverty decreased from 18,5 in 2006 to 5,9 in 2023. Although they still remained the poorest compared to urban households, the severity of poverty in urban households fell from 5,1 in 2006 to 2,6 in 2023.

Figure 4.7.2: Household poverty shares by settlement type (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

Table 4.7.2: Household poverty shares by settlement type (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

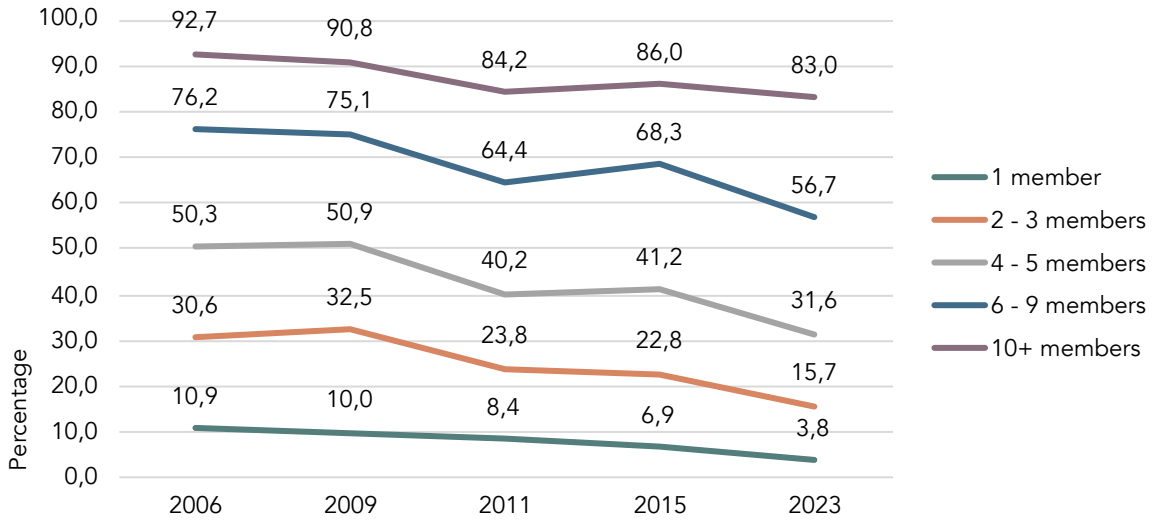
Settlement Type	Poverty Shares				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**
Urban	44,0	47,4	45,9	46,4	54,6
Rural	56,0	52,6	54,1	53,6	45,4

Figure 4.7.2 and Table 4.7.2 show the share of poverty by settlement type in 2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023. In 2006, rural households accounted for a greater share of the proportion of poor households at 56,0% compared to 44,0% of urban households. Between 2006 and 2015, the rural share gradually declined from 56,0% to 53,6%, while the urban share slightly increased from 44,0% in 2006 to 46,4% in 2015. However, by 2023, a shift occurred with urban households now accounting for the majority of poor households. The poverty shares in rural households dropped to 45,4% in 2023, whereas in urban households increased to 54,6%.

4.8 – Household poverty and household size

Household size seems to be an important predictor of poverty outcomes in South Africa. Figure 4.8.1 shows the incidence of household poverty by household size between 2006 and 2023. Larger households (10+ members) recorded notable higher incidences of poverty than those with fewer household members.

Figure 4.8.1: Incidence of household poverty by household size (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)



Single-person households consistently had the lowest poverty levels, with poverty falling notably from 10,9% in 2006 to 3,8% in 2023 (a 7,1 percentage point decline). Households with 10 or more members had the highest poverty incidence at 92,7% in 2006, which dropped to 83,0% in 2023. The incidence of poverty for households with 6 to 9 members registered a decline between 2006 and 2011 from 76,2% to 64,4%, followed by an increase to 68,3% in 2015, before finally dropping to 56,7% in 2023. Households with 2 to 3 members showed an improvement from 30,6% in 2006 to 15,7% in 2023. Lastly, households with 4 to 5 members saw a substantial decrease, falling from 50,3% to 31,6% over the same period.

Table 4.8.1: Household poverty measures by household size (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

	Incidence of Poverty (P0)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**42,1**	**41,0**	**31,9**	**31,8**	**22,9**
1 member	10,9	10,0	8,4	6,9	3,8
2 - 3 members	30,6	32,5	23,8	22,8	15,7
4 - 5 members	50,3	50,9	40,2	41,2	31,6
6 - 9 members	76,2	75,1	64,4	68,3	56,7
10+ members	92,7	90,8	84,2	86,0	83,0
	Poverty Gap (P1)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**17,9**	**17,8**	**12,4**	**12,3**	**7,7**
1 member	2,8	2,5	2,2	1,5	1,0
2 - 3 members	10,2	11,2	7,5	7,2	4,4
4 - 5 members	20,7	22,1	15,6	15,6	10,1
6 - 9 members	38,0	39,3	29,3	31,2	21,6
10+ members	53,9	55,2	44,5	46,5	40,5
	Severity of Poverty (P2)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**9,7**	**9,9**	**6,4**	**6,4**	**3,6**
1 member	1,1	0,9	0,9	0,5	0,4
2 - 3 members	4,7	5,2	3,4	3,2	1,8
4 - 5 members	10,8	12,0	8,0	7,8	4,5
6 - 9 members	22,3	24,1	16,5	17,6	10,7
10+ members	35,6	37,7	27,2	29,4	23,4

The poverty gap for households with 10 or more members showed a notable improvement, decreasing from 53,9% in 2006 to 40,5% in 2023. Their poverty gap fluctuated, peaking at 55,2% in 2009 before falling to a low of 40,5% in 2023. There was a similar fluctuating pattern for households with 6 to 9 members which had a poverty incidence of 38,0% in 2006, increasing to 39,3% in 2009, then declining to 21,6% in 2023. Between 2011 and 2015, the poverty gap for households with 4 to 5 members remained unchanged at 15,6% before declining to 10,1% in 2023. Households with 2 to 3 members showed a steady and significant decrease in their poverty gap after 2009. The poverty gap dropped by more than half from 11,2% in 2009 to 4,4% in 2023. Single-person households constantly had the lowest poverty gap which dropped from 2,8% in 2006 to 1,0% in 2023.

Figure 4.8.2: Household poverty shares by household size (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

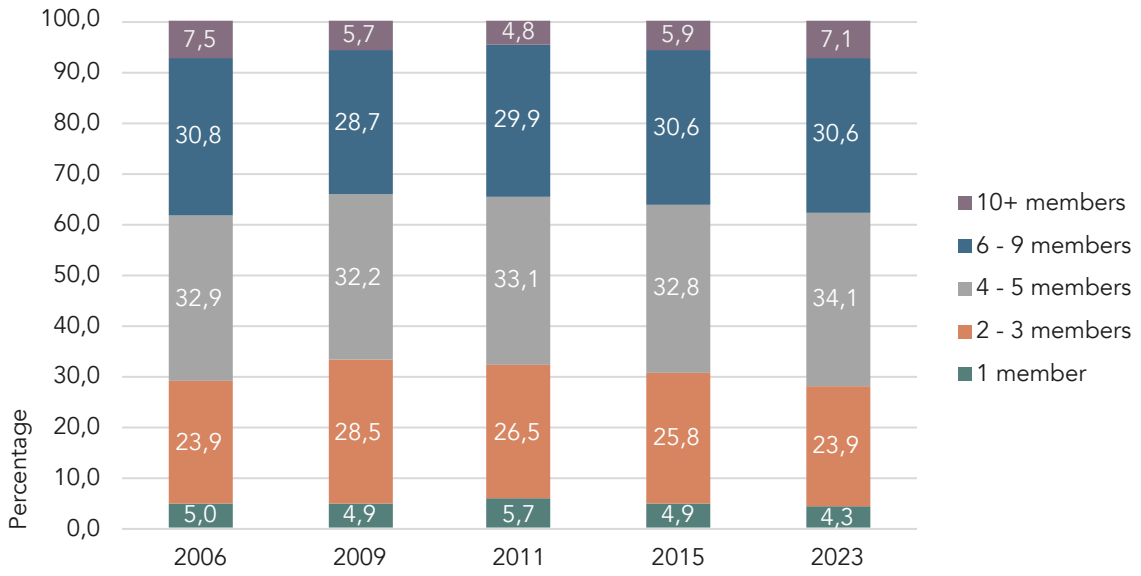


Table 4.8.2: Household poverty shares by household size (LBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

Household size	Poverty Shares				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**
1 household member	5,0	4,9	5,7	4,9	4,3
2 - 3 household members	23,9	28,5	26,5	25,8	23,9
4 - 5 household members	32,9	32,2	33,1	32,8	34,1
6 - 9 household members	30,8	28,7	29,9	30,6	30,6
10+ household members	7,5	5,7	4,8	5,9	7,1

According to Figure 4.8.2 and Table 4.8.2, single-person households had the lowest poverty share in all the years except for 2011 when households with 10 or more members was lower. Households with 2 to 3 members had the same poverty share of 23,9% in 2006 and 2023; however, in 2009 these households had a higher share of 28,5% which decreased to 26,5% in 2011. The share of poverty was the highest for households with 4 to 5 members at 32,9% in 2006, which increased to 34,1% in 2023. The poverty share for households with 6 to 9 members remained relatively stable in 2006, 2015 and 2023 around 31%. The share for households with 10 or more members declined from 7,5% in 2006 to 4,8% in 2011, but then increased to 7,1% in 2023.

4.9 – Household poverty and metropolitan municipality

Table 4.9.1 shows that the incidence of household poverty in metropolitan municipalities gradually decreased from 23,1% to 17,1% between 2009 and 2023. The City of Johannesburg was the only metro that experienced a consistent decline over this period from 22,6% in 2009 to 15,6% in 2023. In 2023, the highest incidences of household poverty were recorded in Buffalo City and Mangaung metros at 26,8% and 25,9%, respectively. Meanwhile, the City of Cape Town had the lowest poverty incidence in 2023 at 11,8%. Between 2009 and 2023, the Ekurhuleni metro decreased from 23,8% to 14,7% representing a reduction of 9,1 percentage points.

Table 4.9.1: Household poverty measures by metropolitan municipality (LBPL) (2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

	Incidence of Poverty (P0)			
	2009	2011	2015	2023
All metros	**23,1**	**18,2**	**19,1**	**17,1**
City of Cape Town	20,6	12,6	14,5	11,8
Buffalo City	*	*	24,7	26,8
Nelson Mandela Bay	25,7	27,7	24,2	19,6
eThekwini Metropolitan	25,7	27,2	27,3	25,9
Mangaung Metropolitan	*	24,8	19,8	19,3
City of Johannesburg	22,6	18,4	16,7	15,6
Ekurhuleni	23,8	14,5	18,6	14,7
City of Tshwane	21,9	14,5	17,1	16,8
	Poverty Gap (P1)			
	2009	2011	2015	2023
All metros	**8,1**	**6,1**	**6,3**	**5,5**
City of Cape Town	7,2	3,5	4,5	3,5
Buffalo City	*	*	9,2	8,7
Nelson Mandela Bay	8,5	10,9	7,9	5,8
eThekwini Metropolitan	9,3	10,0	10,1	9,1
Mangaung Metropolitan	*	8,5	6,4	5,9
City of Johannesburg	7,9	6,2	5,2	5,1
Ekurhuleni	8,1	4,2	5,4	4,5
City of Tshwane	7,7	4,9	5,9	5,3
	Severity of Poverty (P2)			
	2009	2011	2015	2023
All metros	**3,8**	**2,9**	**2,9**	**2,5**
City of Cape Town	3,5	1,4	2,0	1,5
Buffalo City	*	*	4,5	3,9
Nelson Mandela Bay	3,8	5,4	3,7	2,5
eThekwini Metropolitan	4,6	5,1	5,1	4,3
Mangaung Metropolitan	*	4,0	2,8	2,6
City of Johannesburg	3,8	3,0	2,3	2,3
Ekurhuleni	3,7	1,9	2,3	2,1
City of Tshwane	3,7	2,2	2,6	2,3

** The estimates for Buffalo City in 2009 and 2011, as well as for Mangaung in 2009 cannot be derived in those years due to geographic boundary changes.*

According to Table 4.9.1, household poverty in metros in Gauteng (City of Johannesburg, Ekurhuleni, and City of Tshwane) showed declining poverty levels. Furthermore, their poverty gaps were among the lowest in 2023. Overall, the poverty gaps reduced steadily between 2009 and 2023, showing that poor households are on average fairly close to the LBPL for most metros, while the severity of poverty also followed the same downward pattern.

Table 4.9.2: Household poverty shares by metropolitan municipality (LBPL) (2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

Metropolitan municipality	Share			
	2009	2011	2015	2023
All metros	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**
City of Cape Town	16,8	12,4	13,2	11,7
Buffalo City	*	*	4,2	4,9
Nelson Mandela Bay	6,4	7,3	5,6	5,1
eThekwini Metropolitan	19,7	23,7	22,8	21,7
Mangaung Metropolitan	*	6,3	3,6	3,8
City of Johannesburg	24,3	24,5	20,8	23,8
Ekurhuleni	19,4	14,2	17,1	14,2
City of Tshwane	13,5	11,6	12,7	14,8

** The estimates for Buffalo City in 2009 and 2011, as well as for Mangaung in 2009 cannot be derived in those years due to geographic boundary changes.*

Table 4.9.2 shows the poverty shares by metropolitan municipalities from 2009 to 2023 based on the LBPL. The share of poverty increased for households in the City of Johannesburg from 20,8% in 2015 to 23,8% in 2023, while for households in eThekwini metro, the poverty share decreased from 22,8% to 21,7% over the same period. For City of Tshwane, their household poverty share rose from 12,7% to 14,8% between 2015 and 2023. Mangaung, Buffalo City and Nelson Mandela Bay metros recorded the lowest poverty shares in 2015 and 2023.

4.10 – Summary of findings on household poverty

Status in 2023

- In 2023, 29,8% of female-headed households were poor compared to 17,6% of their male counterparts.
- Households headed by black Africans had the highest incidence of poverty in 2023 at 26,3%, followed by coloureds at 16,5%. Meanwhile, Indian/Asian- and white-headed households recorded poverty levels below 3,0%.
- Child-headed households experienced the highest incidence of poverty at 33,0% in 2023; however, the poverty share of such households was less than 1,0%. Households headed by young adults (18 to 24 years) recorded the lowest poverty rate at 17,8%, followed by households headed by individuals aged 25 to 34 years at 18,9%.
- In 2023, households headed by individuals with no formal schooling had the highest incidence of poverty at 50,1%, followed by those with some primary (41,1%) and primary (35,9%) education. Households headed by individuals with higher education recorded the lowest poverty incidence at 3,1%.
- In 2023, households residing in Limpopo had a highest incidence of poverty at 31,2%, followed by North West and KZN at 29,6% and 29,1%, respectively. Households with the lowest poverty rates were located in the Western Cape (13,3%) and Gauteng (16,0%).

- Poverty rates were significantly higher in rural areas than urban areas in 2023. Households in rural areas recorded a poverty incidence of 34,5%, while their urban counterparts recorded an incidence of 17,9%.
- Larger households are more likely to be poor. Households with 10 and more members had a poverty incidence of 83,0%, followed by those with 6 to 9 members at 56,7% in 2023.
- Households in Buffalo City (26,8%) and eThekwini (25,9%) had the highest incidence of poverty in 2023. While the City of Cape Town (11,8%) and Ekurhuleni (14,7%) had the lowest poverty rates.

Changes from 2015

- Households headed by black Africans (37,5%) and coloureds (24,6%) had the highest poverty rates in 2015, which declined in 2023 to 26,3% and 16,5%, respectively. Meanwhile, poverty among white and Indian/Asian headed households slightly increased over the same period.
- Between 2015 and 2023, the incidence of poverty declined in all households irrespective of the age of the household head. The largest decline was observed for households headed by individuals aged 65 years and older.
- Households headed by individuals with primary and some primary education experienced the largest declines in poverty incidence between 2015 and 2023 at 15,3 and 14,7 percentage points, respectively.
- Between 2015 and 2023, there was a decline in household poverty for all the provinces. Over this period, households in the Eastern Cape and Limpopo recorded the largest improvements at 17,6% and 17,1%, respectively. Meanwhile, Gauteng had the lowest reduction in poverty over this period at just 1,8 percentage points.
- Buffalo City was the only metro that experienced an increase in poverty over this period, rising from 24,7% in 2015 to 26,8% in 2023.

Changes from 2006

- Between 2006 and 2023, household poverty in South Africa declined from 42,1% to 22,9%. Poverty remained predominantly higher for female-headed households compared to male-headed households throughout the entire period.
- Households headed by black Africans and coloureds recorded notable reductions in their incidence of poverty between 2006 to 2023. Indian/Asian-headed households experienced a notable decline between 2006 and 2009, but then stayed roughly at the same level between 2009 and 2023. The incidence of poverty among white-headed households remained fairly flat over the period, but did register a slight increase in 2023.
- Older household heads (65+) experienced the largest reduction in household poverty between 2006 and 2023 at 34,2 percentage points.
- Households headed by individuals with no formal schooling recorded the highest incidence of poverty between 2006 and 2023. However, their incidence decreased notably from 75,9% in 2006 to 50,1% in 2023. The proportion of poor households headed by individuals with a matric or higher education showed very little change over this period, with poverty incidence remaining fairly stable (except for a slight spike in 2009).

- All provinces recorded notable reductions in their incidence of household poverty between 2006 and 2023. The provinces that saw the biggest improvements over that period were Limpopo (28,8 percentage points), Mpumalanga (28,3 percentage points), and Eastern Cape (26,6 percentage points). Eastern Cape was the only province that experienced a consistent decline in the incidence of poverty across all data points between 2006 and 2023.
- Households in rural areas had a significantly higher rates of poverty incidence compared to their urban counterparts between 2006 and 2023. However, these rural households recorded a larger decline in poverty over this period – dropping from 67,6% in 2006 to 34,5% in 2023 – resulting in a narrowing of the gap between settlement types.
- Households with 10 or more members had very high levels of poverty incidence, starting at 92,7% in 2006 and only declining to 83,0% in 2023.

CHAPTER 5

Rebasing of the national poverty lines

This chapter uses extracts from the NPL 2023 Technical Report titled *"Methodological report on the rebasing of the national poverty lines using the Income & Expenditure Survey 2022/23"* (Report No. 03-10-30) to provide a brief summary of the construction of the rebased 2023 lines using IES 2022/23 data.

5.1 – Poverty Lines

Statistics South Africa uses the internationally recognized "cost of basic needs" (CoBN) approach to establish the national poverty lines. The decision to adopt this approach was informed by comprehensive stakeholder consultations and expert engagements on the optimal methodology for poverty measurement in South Africa prior to the development of the first national poverty lines. Despite adopting this approach, Stats SA recognizes that poverty manifests in various forms and can be measured through multiple definitions. In addition to focusing on the cost of basic needs approach which measures money-metric poverty, Stats SA also applies diverse definitions to profile poverty subjectively and in a multidimensional manner in separate reports.

The first NPLs for South Africa were developed using the IES conducted in 2000. These NPLs were developed as pilot NPLs in 2008 (Statistics South Africa 2012). The IES 2000 lines (NPL 2000 Series) were then rebased using IES 2010/11 data and published in 2015 (Statistics South Africa 2015). The current rebasing exercise, therefore, updated the IES 2010/11 lines (NPL 2011 Series). Between rebasing intervals, Stats SA publishes inflation-adjusted poverty lines annually.

There are three NPLs that Stats SA develops, namely the food poverty line (FPL), lower-bound poverty line (LBPL), and upper-bound poverty line (UBPL). These lines measure varying levels of poverty. The FPL indicates the monetary threshold below which individuals cannot consume enough food to meet the minimum daily energy requirement. The LBPL and UBPL include a non-food component that is estimated based on the non-food consumption of one of two target populations. The LBPL includes the cost of basic food plus the average non-food spending of households whose total expenditure is near the food poverty line. At this threshold, due to limited resources, individuals are choosing between sufficient food to reach the minimum daily energy requirement and essential non-food items (such as clothing and transportation). In contrast, the UBPL includes the cost of basic food plus the average non-food spending of households whose food expenditure is equal to the food poverty line. At this higher threshold, individuals can afford enough food to meet the minimum daily energy requirement and spend on non-food items.

5.2 – The Welfare Consumption Aggregate

To measure monetary poverty, three main components are required: (1) a welfare measure for individuals that is used to derive a distribution of living standards; (2) a poverty line that is used as the threshold below which individuals are classified as poor; and (3) a poverty measure that is the summary statistics of poverty in the population. This section focuses on the first component – a welfare measure. In South Africa, household consumption expenditure is the proxy for the standard of living (the welfare measure).

The welfare measure (welfare consumption aggregate) encompasses the total monetary value of all goods and services consumed by households within a specified period. This includes expenditures on food, non-food items, durable goods, and housing, thereby providing a comprehensive reflection of household consumption patterns. By aggregating these expenditures, the nominal welfare consumption aggregate serves as a foundational measure from which adjustments for household size and temporal price changes – via the CPI – can be made to ensure comparability across households and over time. The development of the WCA adhered to the methodological framework established by Deaton and Zaidi (2002), but also incorporated tailored adjustments to address the specific contextual requirements.

A comprehensive list of all items incorporated into the WCA is included in the NPL 2023 Technical Report (Report No. 03-10-30). The following categories of expenditures were excluded from the WCA:

- Transfers to other households
- Donations to religious or charitable organizations
- In-patient health expenditures
- Investments, savings and loan repayment
- Taxes and levies (income tax)
- Life event expenses
- Value of free public services such as free health services and free education services
- Leisure time
- Inputs for household businesses
- Inputs for household own produce
- Major household repairs or upgrades to dwelling

5.3 – Rebasing of the national poverty lines

As noted in Section 5.1, Stats SA applies the "cost of basic needs" approach in the development and rebasing of national poverty lines. While the methodology was consistently applied in the previous rebasing exercises, the current iteration introduces several methodological enhancements. These updates reflect internationally recommended techniques and aim to ensure improved measurement and greater alignment with global and national standards.

The national standards refer to the recommendations by Budlender et al. (2015) to evaluate the computation of the current rebased UPBL, with the objective of refining the truncation method previously applied during the 2015 rebasing exercise using the IES 2010/11. Although the recommendation was tested, it was ultimately not adopted in the final computation. Instead, the method chosen was to exclude any households that simultaneously overlapped in the top three total expenditure deciles while also being in the bottom three food expenditure deciles of the distribution. This section presents details of the rebasing exercise and highlights improvements implemented.

5.3.1 Determination of a reference food basket

To establish a poverty threshold in monetary terms to distinguish poor from the non-poor, it is necessary to cost a basket of goods and services that represent the essential basic needs of individuals. Beginning with food, data from the IES 2022/23 revealed that food preferences vary widely across South African households, influenced by factors such as geographic location and income level. A total of 375 food items were recorded in the survey, demonstrating that the normative daily caloric requirement for an individual can be met through a broad variety of food bundles. This diversity necessitates the construction of a reference food basket that reflects food items consumed by a typical poor household in South Africa. Therefore, the process of constructing the reference food basket for this exercise involved three main steps.

The first step involved identifying the reference population – households whose consumption behaviour will anchor the cost of basic needs. In the CoBN approach, this reference group is typically drawn from households around the lower part of the consumption distribution so as to reflect "typical poor" consumption patterns rather than the overall average household. This is important because even when caloric intake remains constant, household food expenditure varies: higher-income households tend to spend more per calorie due to their preference for branded, convenient, and/or premium products. At the other end, using the poorest decile (i.e. decile 1) as part of the reference group can bias the poverty basket and line because their observed consumption often reflects acute deprivation, measurement noise, and atypical coping strategies rather than "typical poor" needs. As such, households within per capita expenditure deciles 2 to 6 were chosen as the reference population to derive a food basket that meets minimum caloric requirements based on actual diets of a typical poor household.

The second step involved selecting food items that are commonly consumed by the reference group of households identified above. The same criterion used in compiling the CPI basket of goods and services was applied. A food item qualified for inclusion if it (1) accounted for at least 0,5 percent of total food consumption expenditure and (2) was consumed by at least 10 percent of total households. Using this criterion, 34 food items were selected, representing approximately 77 percent of total food consumption expenditure for households in consumption per capita deciles 2 – 6.

In the third step, attention was given to ensuring that the reference food basket accurately represents consumption patterns across different settlement types, including urban areas, traditional areas, and farm areas. Using the same selection criteria applied in the second step, but now for each settlement type individually, five additional items – spaghetti/macaroni/pasta, instant noodles, cheese, sweet biscuits/cookies and dried beans – were incorporated into the reference food basket due to their significant importance in specific locales. For example, spaghetti/macaroni/pasta, instant noodles, cheese and sweet biscuits/cookies were notably prevalent in urban areas, while dried beans were more commonly consumed in traditional and farm areas. The inclusion of these five additional items expanded the reference food basket to encompass 39 food items in total.

Moreover, to ensure nutritional diversity and to reflect widely consumed items, seven additional food products – samp, apples, bananas, instant/powdered coffee, Russian sausages, fruit juices and powdered cream – were also incorporated into the reference food basket, despite not meeting the original expenditure threshold of 0,5%. However, each of these items did meet the second criteria of being consumed by over 10 percent

of households. Ultimately, the final food reference basket comprised 46 items as shown in Table 5.3.1, representing roughly 90% of total food consumption for households in consumption per capita deciles 2 – 6.

Table 5.3.1: The 2023 Reference Food Basket

Food Category	Food Item Description for NPL 2023 Reference Food Basket
Cereals and cereal products	Rice
	Cake wheat flour
	Mealie meal
	Samp
	Brown bread
	White bread
	Sweet biscuits / cookies
	Breakfast cereal
	Spaghetti / macaroni / pasta
	Instant noodles
Fish, live animals, meat, and other parts of slaughtered land animals	Beef
	Poultry
	Poultry offal
	Chicken (heads and feet)
	Boerewors
	Polony
	Russian sausages
	Canned fish
Milk, other dairy products and eggs	Fresh full cream milk
	Long life full cream milk
	Powdered cream
	Cheese
	Yoghurt
	Sour milk
	Eggs
Oils and fats	Cooking oil
	Margarine
Fruits and nuts	Bananas
	Apples

Food Category	Food Item Description for NPL 2023 Reference Food Basket
Vegetables, tubers, plantains, bananas, and pulses	Cabbage
	Tomatoes
	Onions and shallots
	Pumpkin
	Potatoes
	Dried beans
	Canned beans
	Potato crisps
Sugar, confectionery, and dessert	White sugar
	Brown sugar
Ready-made food and other food products n.e.c.	Mayonnaise
	Soup powder
Fruit and vegetable juice	Fruit juice
	Concentrated fruit / vegetable juices
Coffee and coffee substitutes	Instant coffee
	Ceylon / black tea
Soft drinks	Aerated / soft drinks

5.3.2 The food poverty line

While food is undeniably a fundamental necessity, establishing a consumption threshold is essential to determine whether an individual is experiencing food deprivation. A baseline of 2 100 kilocalories (kcal) per day recommended to meet the energy requirements of an average adult engaged in light physical activity was adopted. This threshold of 2 100 kcal mirrors the standard used in the prior rebasing exercise based on the IES 2010/11.

To determine the food poverty line, the cost of acquiring 2 100 kcal per person per day was estimated utilising the reference food basket. This estimation required three essential data inputs: the quantity of each food item consumed, the caloric value of each item (per 100 grams), and its price (per 100 grams). Due to the absence of food quantity data in the IES 2022/23, Stats SA utilized monthly food price data at national level to derive consumption quantities. The CPI price dataset includes detailed descriptions of each food item, its corresponding price, and the associated quantity in grams, kilograms, millilitres or litres. Therefore, to estimate consumption quantities, reported household consumption expenditure for each food item was divided by the unit price (per 100g) as provided in the price data. This approach enabled the calculation of quantities consumed. Caloric information was obtained from the SAMRC's food composition tables, while the price data was sourced from Stats SA's own collection efforts for CPI computation purposes.

Drawing upon these foundational data inputs, the analytical process determined that the reference food basket provides a total of 442 015 kcal per person per year. This equates to an average daily intake of 1 211 kilocalories per person, at a monthly expenditure of R457, or R14.72 per day. Given that the observed caloric intake of 1 211 kcal is significantly below the recommended threshold of 2 100 kcal per day, a proportional adjustment was applied. By scaling the expenditure in accordance with the required energy intake, the cost necessary to achieve nutritional adequacy was derived. Consequently, the food poverty line was established at R777 per person per month, reflecting a cost of R25.90 per kilocalorie per day.

5.3.3 The lower and upper-bound poverty lines

It is important to recognize that basic needs extend beyond mere sustenance. Food alone does not define poverty. People also require access to basic non-food necessities such as shelter, healthcare, clothing, transportation, and education. To account for these, Stats SA estimates two broader poverty thresholds: the LBPL and UBPL. Unlike food consumption, there are no universal benchmarks for non-food thresholds to classify individuals as poor. Therefore, using a methodology adapted from Ravallion (1998), two reference groups of households were identified. The averaged median non-food consumption expenditure of each reference group of households was added to the food line to produce the LBPL and the UBPL.

It is crucial to understand the rationale behind these poverty lines by recognizing the delicate balance between essential food and non-food expenditures. The LBPL reflects a very conservative assumption about essential non-food (i.e. very basic clothing, shelter, health, transport, etc.). These households are so resource-constrained that any non-food spending implies sacrificing some food intake. The UBPL reflects a more generous assumption about essential non-food spending. These households do achieve the food threshold and reveal the minimum non-food spending commonly needed alongside it.

The LBPL was therefore established by incorporating the averaged median non-food consumption expenditure of households whose total spending approximates the food poverty line. Following the methodology set forth by Ravallion, this averaged median is determined by considering households whose total consumption expenditure falls within a range of 10% above or below the food poverty line. The analysis was conducted by increasing the interval in successive 1% steps up to a maximum of 10%. The median non-food consumption expenditures of households within each incremental band were then averaged to derive the lower-bound figure. The underlying assumption is that these households must economize on basic food necessities, thereby subsisting on survival foods to be able to cover only essential non-food items, so, their non-food expenditure is indicative of the minimum essential spending on non-food basic needs. Using this methodology, the average non-food expenditure at a mid-point of the IES 2022/23 survey period (May 2023 prices) was R523 per capita per month which, when added to the food poverty line (R777), yields a LBPL of R1 300 per person per month.

The UBPL was derived similarly, albeit with a different reference group of households: those whose food (rather than total) consumption expenditures closely align with the food poverty line. The UBPL was established by averaging the non-food expenditures of households whose food expenditure falls within a range of 10% above or below the food poverty line. The analysis was conducted by increasing the interval in successive

1% steps up to a maximum of 10%. This threshold operates under the premise that these households can adequately sustain their daily energy intake, thus their non-food expenditures represent merely adequate survival costs. For these households, the averaged median non-food consumption expenditure was found to be R1 858 per person per month. Adding this to the food poverty line (R777) gives an UBPL of R2 635 per person per month.

Comparing the newly rebased poverty lines to the 2010/11 lines (adjusted to 2023 prices using CPI) revealed higher values in the 2022/23 lines. As shown in Table 5.3.2, the food poverty line difference is about R17, while differences are larger for the lower- and upper-bound lines (R247 and R1 077, respectively). Four factors may explain these disparities:

i. The previous rebasing exercise utilised data from the IES 2010/11, meaning that those poverty lines were based on household spending patterns of that period. Over a decade later, these spending patterns have shifted due to factors such as changes in dietary habits, the introduction of new market items, and expanded social protection programs.

ii. The WCA used for the 2010/11 rebasing significantly differs from the current one. More household expenditure items are included in the current WCA. Additionally, the method used to estimate rental values for owners changed from using rental yields to using the QR method. The application of the QR method results in higher poverty lines compared to those using rental yields, particularly for the UBPL.

iii. Methodological differences also exist between the rebasing exercises. Although both the 2010/11 and 2022/23 poverty lines applied the CoBN approach, certain nuances distinguished their application, particularly with respect to the reference group of households used. For the IES 2010/11 lines, the reference food basket was determined using food consumption expenditure shares from households in per capita expenditure deciles 2 to 4 (Stats SA 2015). In contrast, the IES 2022/23 lines calculated these shares using households in food deciles 2 to 6. Naturally, households in per capita expenditure deciles 2 to 4 would have lesser average expenditure on non-food items compared to households in per capita expenditure deciles of 2 to 6.

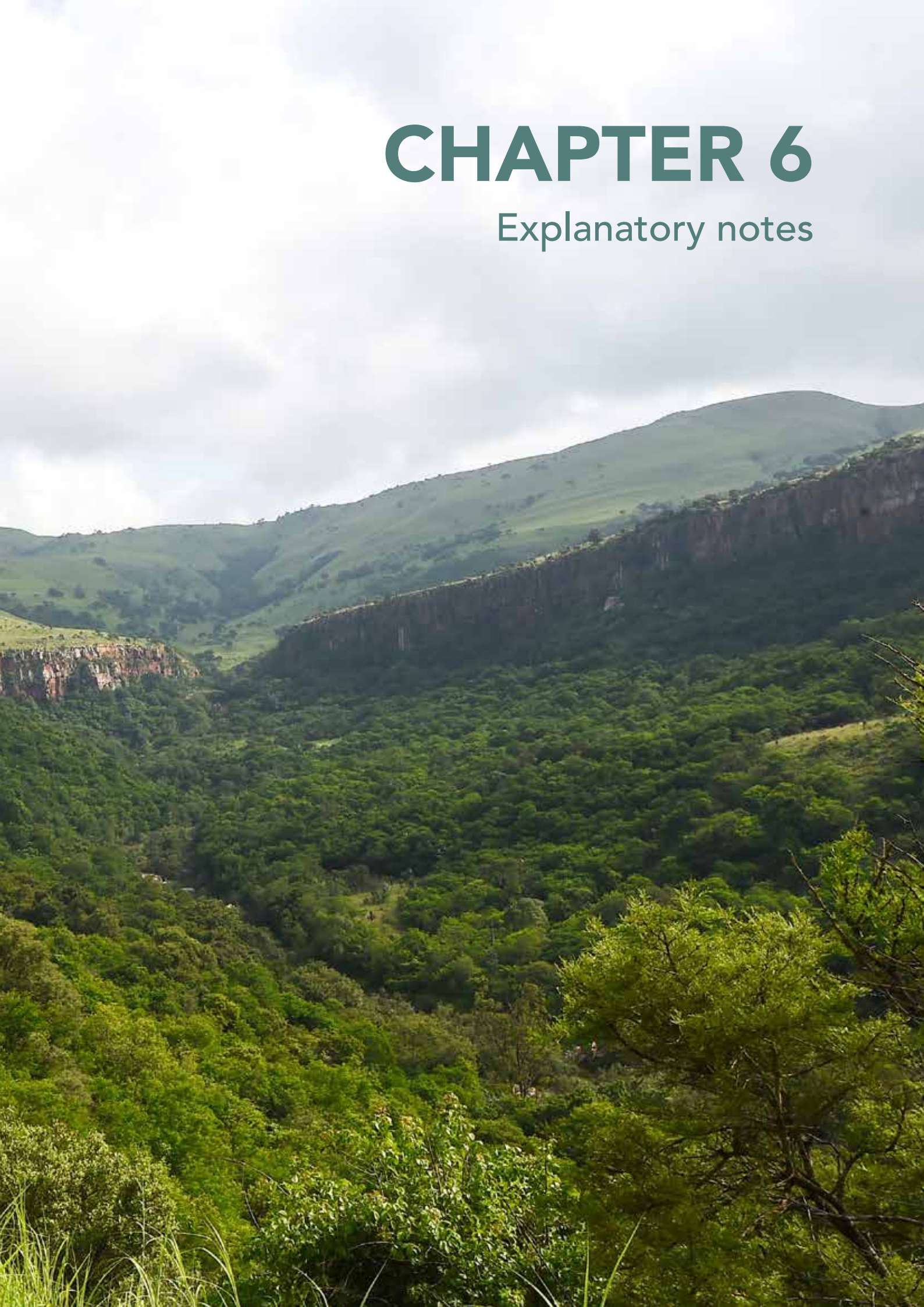
iv. Furthermore, the upper-bound poverty line based on the IES 2010/11 was established using data exclusively from households within consumption deciles 2 to 7 (Stats SA 2015), whereas the updated UBPL incorporated all households whose food consumption levels were close to the food poverty line, but excluding households in high per-capita expenditure deciles assumed to have under-reported their food consumption. Similar to Point (iii) above, households in per capita deciles 2 to 7 will have lesser average expenditure compared to when all households are considered.

Table 5.3.2: The 2023 rebased national poverty lines

Type of poverty line	Value of food component (ZAR per person per month)	Value of non-food component (ZAR per person per month)	Total value (ZAR per person per month)
Rebased poverty lines using IES 2022/23			
FPL	777	-	777
LBPL	777	523	1 300
UBPL	777	1 858	2 635
Poverty lines based on IES 2010/11 adjusted to 2023 using CPI			
FPL	760	-	760
LBPL	760	298	1 058
UBPL	760	798	1 558

CHAPTER 6

Explanatory notes



6.1 The instruments of data collection

Between 2005 and 2015, IES and LCS surveys used three PAPI data collection instruments to collect information from sampled households, namely the household questionnaire, weekly diaries, and the summary questionnaire. For the IES 2022/23, Stats SA moved to digital collection tools and utilised CAPI versions of the household questionnaire and weekly diary. A digital COICOP codebook replaced the summary questionnaire. Given the self-enumeration element of the diary methodology, a PAPI instrument was still provided to respondents during IES 2022/23 data collection to allow them to record their daily acquisitions. After survey officers collected the PAPI diaries from households, they transferred the information to the CAPI diary tool and coded entries with the assistance of the COICOP codebook.

6.1.1 Household questionnaire

The household questionnaire is a collection of individual and household questions. These questions are split into different modules and were administered to respondents over the course of the survey period. Generally, one module was completed during each visit to the household (approximately once per week for four weeks).

6.1.2 Weekly diaries

This is a booklet that was left with the responding household to track all acquisitions made by the household during the diary-keeping period. The household (after being trained by the survey officer) was responsible for recording all their daily acquisitions, as well as information about where they purchased the item (source) and the purpose of the item. A household completed a different diary for each week of the survey period. For the IES 2022/23, a PAPI diary was still provided to households on a weekly basis to aid documenting their acquisitions, but after the diary was collected from respondents, it was captured on a CAPI diary tool. This change meant that diary information could be subjected to quality processes while data collection was still in progress which helped improve the overall quality of diary data. Previously, the diary data could only be reviewed after the scanning of the PAPI diaries was completed after data collection processes had been completed.

6.1.3 Summary questionnaire / COICOP codebook

This is a booklet of questions for the sole use of the survey officer. Between 2005 and 2015, the instrument had two primary functions. First, it served as a code list for survey officers when assigning COICOP (Classification of Individual Consumption according to Purpose) codes for the reported items recorded in the weekly diary. Second, it helped summarise the household's total consumption expenditure on a weekly basis to allow the survey officers to better understand the household's acquisition patterns so as to ensure accuracy and completeness of the diary. For the IES 2022/23, this instrument was digitised into a COICOP codebook which was used by survey officers to facilitate the transfer of the PAPI diary information collected from the sampled households into the CAPI system.

6.2 How the surveys were conducted

6.2.1 IES 2005/06 and LCS 2008/09

The IES 2005/06 and LCS 2008/09 were both split into 12 survey periods that each revolved around one month of diary keeping. A household was in a sample for a period of six weeks. The instruments outlined above were administered in stages at different visits during the six weeks of data collection. A module was administered in the beginning of each week. A detailed list of activities conducted each week is shown in Table 6.2.1 below.

Table 6.2.1: Data collection activities by week for the IES 2005/06 and LCS 2008/09

Week 0 *(Week before diary-keeping)*	Weeks 1 to 4 *(Diary-keeping weeks)*	Week 5 *(Week after diary-keeping)*
• Hand-over by publicity team • Establish rapport with household • Train household on diary completion • Conduct interview 1 • Make appointments for anthropometric measurements*	• Drop weekly diaries to be completed by household • Conduct interviews 2/3/4/5 • Collect completed diaries for week 1/2/3 • Verify completed diaries for week 1/2/3 • Codification by means of the summary questionnaire • Conduct anthropometric measurements*	• Conduct interview 6 • Collect completed diaries for week 4 • Verify completed diaries for week 4 • Codification by means of the summary questionnaire • Conduct any outstanding anthropometric measurements*

** Only applicable to the LCS 2008/09*

6.2.2 IES 2010/11, LCS 2014/15 and IES 2022/23

The IES 2010/11, LCS 2014/15 and IES 2022/23 were split into 26 survey periods that each revolved around a two-week diary keeping period. A household was in a sample for a period of four weeks. The survey instruments were administered in stages at different visits during the four weeks of data collection. A module was administered at the beginning of each week. A detailed list of activities conducted each week is shown in Table 6.2.2.

Table 6.2.2: Data collection activities by week for the IES 2010/11, LCS 2014/15 and IES 2022/23

Week 0 *(Week before diary-keeping)*	Weeks 1 to 2 *(Diary-keeping weeks)*	Week 3 *(Week after diary-keeping)*
• Hand-over by publicity team • Establish rapport with household • Train household on diary completion • Conduct interview 1 • Make appointments for anthropometric measurements*	• Drop weekly diaries to be completed by household • Conduct interviews 2 and 3 • Collect completed diaries for week 1 • Verify completed diaries for week 1 • Codification by means of the summary questionnaire / COICOP codebook • Transcribe weekly paper diary to electronic diary** • Conduct anthropometric measurements*	• Conduct interview 4 • Collect completed diaries for week 2 • Verify completed diaries for week 2 • Codification by means of the summary questionnaire / COICOP codebook • Transcribe weekly paper diary to electronic diary** • Conduct any outstanding anthropometric measurements*

** Only applicable to the LCS 2014/15*

*** Only applicable to the IES 2022/23*

6.3 Data collection approaches

There are three main approaches used to collect data on household consumption expenditure, namely the acquisition approach, the payment approach, and the consumption approach. All three methods were used at some stage during data collection for all five surveys.

The ***acquisition approach*** entails taking into account the total value of goods and services acquired (not necessarily consumed, but for household consumption purposes) during a given period, whether the household paid for them or not. This is the general approach that was followed for most of the items. Information on non-durable, semi-durable and durable items is collected using the acquisition approach.

The ***payment approach*** takes into account the total payment made for all goods and services in a given period, whether the household has started consuming them or not. This approach is followed when collecting data of expenditure on services such as education, health, insurance, etc.

The ***consumption approach*** takes into account the total value of all goods and services consumed or used during a given period. This approach is used when collecting information on own production.

6.4 Time span

Data collection for each of these household expenditure surveys covered a period of 12 months.

- The IES 2005/06 was conducted between 22 August 2005 and 10 September 2006 with diary-keeping starting on 1 September 2005 and ending on 31 August 2006.
- The LCS 2008/09 was conducted between 25 August 2008 and 11 September 2009 with diary-keeping running from 1 September 2008 until 31 August 2009.
- The IES 2010/11 was conducted between 23 August 2010 and 4 September 2011 with diary-keeping starting on 30 August 2010 and ending on 29 August 2011.
- The LCS 2014/15 was conducted between 13 October 2014 and 25 October 2015 with diary-keeping activities running from 20 October 2014 until 19 October 2015.
- The IES 2022/23 was conducted between 7 November 2022 and 26 November 2023 with diary-keeping activities running from 14 November 2022 until 13 November 2023.

Publicity operations for the surveys generally began one month prior to the commencement of data collection and then continued in parallel with data collection activities until the end of the respective survey.

6.5 Sample coverage

The sample for the five surveys included all domestic households, holiday homes and all households in workers' residences, such as mining hostels and dormitories for workers. It did not include institutions such as hospitals, prisons, old-age homes, student hostels and dormitories for scholars. Boarding houses, hotels, lodges and guesthouses were also excluded from the samples.

6.6 Response details

Table 6.6.1 below shows the response rates for the five surveys at a provincial level. Due to the legislative power provided through the Statistics Act (Act No. 6 of 1999) (and as amended by the Statistics Amendment Act (Act No. 29 of 2024)), households sampled to participate in our surveys are compelled by law to participate. This has helped South Africa to achieve some of the highest response rates for household expenditure surveys in the world. However, we do see lower response rates for the two LCS points and recent IES 2022/23 compared to the two earlier IES points. This is likely due to the extra burden the LCS places on respondents and a generally longer questionnaire that is designed to meet additional poverty objectives. Given the 8-year data gap since the LCS 2014/15, the content of the IES 2022/23 was designed to more closely resemble an LCS rather than a streamlined money-metric tool like the earlier IES surveys.

Table 6.6.1: Response rates for IES and LCS surveys

Province	IES 2005/06 (%)	LCS 2008/09 (%)	IES 2010/11 (%)	LCS 2014/15 (%)	IES 2022/23 (%)
South Africa	**96,8**	**88,0**	**91,6**	**84,9**	**81,9**
Western Cape	94,1	85,2	94,3	79,1	77,0
Eastern Cape	99,6	94,2	95,8	92,7	92,7
Northern Cape	98,7	90,4	95,6	90,4	87,4
Free State	98,5	95,9	94,7	86,9	94,0
KwaZulu-Natal	95,9	84,8	92,3	89,6	85,3
North West	97,1	89,3	91,6	90,0	87,4
Gauteng	95,3	79,7	82,9	65,3	67,8
Mpumalanga	96,4	88,5	93,5	91,6	85,6
Limpopo	97,7	94,9	90,3	95,6	93,1

6.7 Weighting

To ensure better compatibility and consistency, the population weights for the 2015, 2011 and 2009 data points were updated and recalibrated to estimates based on the 2022 mid-year population estimates (MYPE) series which was used to weight the 2023 results. The 2022 MYPE was used for weighting as the IES 2022/23 weighting process took place prior to the publication of the 2024 MYPE. No MYPE was produced in 2023 due to the Census 2022. We also compile separate household weights (based on the UN headship rate method) to deal with the challenge of underestimation of the total number of households.

Unfortunately, due to the special sample used for the IES 2005/06 which was not based on the organisation's Master Sample, it is not possible to reliably recalibrate this data point. Therefore, users are cautioned when doing analysis of absolute numbers involving the 2006 data point.

6.8 Reliability of estimates

Analysis of the coefficient of variation (CV) provides a basis for assessing the reliability of survey estimates. Tables 6.8.1 to 6.8.3 show the coefficients of variation, as well as the 95% upper and lower confidence intervals, for the poverty headcount by sex for each of the national poverty lines. Tables 6.8.4 to 6.8.6 show the same information, but for population groups; while Tables 6.8.7 to 6.8.9 do this for province.

As noted earlier in the report, due to generally higher non-response rates experienced by household expenditure surveys, especially in high-walled areas and among richer households, the reliability of estimates for certain population groups – namely Indians/Asians and whites – is low, suggesting less stable or consistent data for these two groups. As Indian/Asian and white populations are fairly small in terms of population size, they are more sensitive to sample loss and non-response. According to the CVs shown in Tables 6.8.4 to 6.8.6, we see that at a national level the reliability of estimates for these two population groups is only problematic for estimates based on the FPL. Estimates based on the LBPL and UBPL are acceptable and reliable to use. However, when disaggregating results at a provincial level, these two population groups have high CVs across all three poverty lines. Therefore, users are advised to use caution when conducting analysis by population group.

Table 6.8.1: Coefficients of variation and confidence intervals for the poverty headcount by sex (FPL)

Sex	Year	95% lower confidence limit	Poverty headcount	95% upper confidence limit	Coefficient of variation
Male	2006	25,0	25,5	26,1	0,011
Male	2009	29,8	30,3	30,7	0,008
Male	2011	19,3	19,7	20,1	0,011
Male	2015	20,7	21,1	21,6	0,011
Male	2023	16,0	16,4	16,9	0,014
Female	2006	28,6	29,2	29,7	0,010
Female	2009	32,5	33,0	33,4	0,007
Female	2011	21,5	21,9	22,4	0,010
Female	2015	23,2	23,6	24,1	0,010
Female	2023	18,2	18,7	19,1	0,012
South Africa	**2006**	**27,0**	**27,4**	**27,8**	**0,007**
South Africa	**2009**	**31,3**	**31,7**	**32,0**	**0,005**
South Africa	**2011**	**20,5**	**20,8**	**21,1**	**0,007**
South Africa	**2015**	**22,1**	**22,4**	**22,7**	**0,007**
South Africa	**2023**	**17,3**	**17,6**	**17,9**	**0,009**

Table 6.8.2: Coefficients of variation and confidence intervals for the poverty headcount by sex (LBPL)

Sex	Year	95% lower confidence limit	Poverty headcount	95% upper confidence limit	Coefficient of variation
Male	2006	54,0	54,7	55,5	0,007
Male	2009	53,2	53,7	54,3	0,005
Male	2011	43,5	44,0	44,6	0,006
Male	2015	44,2	44,8	45,4	0,007
Male	2023	35,4	36,0	36,6	0,008
Female	2006	59,6	60,3	61,0	0,006
Female	2009	57,0	57,5	58,0	0,005
Female	2011	46,9	47,5	48,0	0,006
Female	2015	48,0	48,6	49,2	0,006
Female	2023	39,2	39,7	40,3	0,007
South Africa	**2006**	**57,0**	**57,5**	**58,0**	**0,004**
South Africa	**2009**	**55,3**	**55,7**	**56,1**	**0,004**
South Africa	**2011**	**45,4**	**45,8**	**46,2**	**0,004**
South Africa	**2015**	**46,3**	**46,7**	**47,1**	**0,004**
South Africa	**2023**	**37,5**	**37,9**	**38,3**	**0,005**

Table 6.8.3: Coefficients of variation and confidence intervals for the poverty headcount by sex (UBPL)

Sex	Year	95% lower confidence limit	Poverty headcount	95% upper confidence limit	Coefficient of variation
Male	2006	76,3	77,0	77,6	0,004
Male	2009	74,8	75,4	75,9	0,004
Male	2011	69,2	69,8	70,3	0,004
Male	2015	69,6	70,2	70,8	0,004
Male	2023	64,2	64,8	65,5	0,005
Female	2006	79,9	80,5	81,1	0,004
Female	2009	76,5	77,0	77,5	0,003
Female	2011	71,7	72,2	72,8	0,004
Female	2015	71,4	72,0	72,6	0,004
Female	2023	67,8	68,4	69,0	0,004
South Africa	**2006**	**78,2**	**78,7**	**79,1**	**0,003**
South Africa	**2009**	**75,8**	**76,2**	**76,6**	**0,003**
South Africa	**2011**	**70,6**	**71,0**	**71,4**	**0,003**
South Africa	**2015**	**70,7**	**71,1**	**71,5**	**0,003**
South Africa	**2023**	**66,2**	**66,7**	**67,1**	**0,003**

Table 6.8.4: Coefficients of variation and confidence intervals for the poverty headcount by population group (FPL)

Population group	Year	95% lower confidence limit	Poverty headcount	95% upper confidence limit	Coefficient of variation
Black African	2006	32,4	32,8	33,3	0,007
Black African	2009	37,8	38,2	38,6	0,005
Black African	2011	25,0	25,3	25,7	0,007
Black African	2015	26,4	26,8	27,1	0,007
Black African	2023	20,4	20,8	21,1	0,009
Coloured	2006	13,6	14,5	15,4	0,032
Coloured	2009	15,6	16,3	17,1	0,024
Coloured	2011	8,1	8,6	9,2	0,034
Coloured	2015	11,0	11,7	12,4	0,031
Coloured	2023	7,0	7,8	8,5	0,050
Indian/Asian	2006	0,4	1,3	2,2	0,338
Indian/Asian	2009	0,4	1,1	1,7	0,303
Indian/Asian	2011	0,2	0,5	0,9	0,291
Indian/Asian	2015	0,1	0,3	0,6	0,343
Indian/Asian	2023	0,3	1,2	2,1	0,368
White	2006	0,0	0,1	0,1	0,424
White	2009	0,3	0,4	0,6	0,205
White	2011	0,0	0,1	0,2	0,312
White	2015	-	-	-	-
White	2023	0,0	0,3	0,5	0,420
South Africa	**2006**	**27,0**	**27,4**	**27,8**	**0,007**
South Africa	**2009**	**31,3**	**31,7**	**32,0**	**0,005**
South Africa	**2011**	**20,5**	**20,8**	**21,1**	**0,007**
South Africa	**2015**	**22,1**	**22,4**	**22,7**	**0,007**
South Africa	**2023**	**17,3**	**17,6**	**17,9**	**0,009**

Table 6.8.5: Coefficients of variation and confidence intervals for the poverty headcount by population group (LBPL)

Population group	Year	95% lower confidence limit	Poverty headcount	95% upper confidence limit	Coefficient of variation
Black African	2006	66,8	67,3	67,8	0,004
Black African	2009	65,3	65,7	66,1	0,003
Black African	2011	53,9	54,3	54,7	0,004
Black African	2015	54,1	54,5	55,0	0,004
Black African	2023	43,3	43,8	44,2	0,005
Coloured	2006	41,3	42,8	44,3	0,018
Coloured	2009	38,9	39,9	41,0	0,013
Coloured	2011	28,9	29,8	30,7	0,016
Coloured	2015	33,4	34,4	35,5	0,016
Coloured	2023	23,4	24,6	25,8	0,025
Indian/Asian	2006	8,1	10,5	13,0	0,117
Indian/Asian	2009	5,0	6,5	8,0	0,119
Indian/Asian	2011	2,8	3,6	4,5	0,121
Indian/Asian	2015	2,0	2,8	3,6	0,141
Indian/Asian	2023	4,1	5,8	7,5	0,153
White	2006	0,4	0,6	0,8	0,185
White	2009	1,2	1,5	1,9	0,114
White	2011	0,5	0,7	0,9	0,148
White	2015	0,4	0,7	0,9	0,170
White	2023	0,8	1,4	1,9	0,211
South Africa	**2006**	**57,0**	**57,5**	**58,0**	**0,004**
South Africa	**2009**	**55,3**	**55,7**	**56,1**	**0,004**
South Africa	**2011**	**45,4**	**45,8**	**46,2**	**0,004**
South Africa	**2015**	**46,3**	**46,7**	**47,1**	**0,004**
South Africa	**2023**	**37,5**	**37,9**	**38,3**	**0,005**

Table 6.8.6: Coefficients of variation and confidence intervals for the poverty headcount by population group (UBPL)

Population group	Year	95% lower confidence limit	Poverty headcount	95% upper confidence limit	Coefficient of variation
Black African	2006	88,5	88,8	89,2	0,002
Black African	2009	86,5	86,8	87,1	0,002
Black African	2011	81,1	81,4	81,8	0,002
Black African	2015	80,4	80,8	81,2	0,002
Black African	2023	74,4	74,8	75,2	0,003
Coloured	2006	75,2	76,7	78,2	0,010
Coloured	2009	70,1	71,1	72,1	0,007
Coloured	2011	61,9	62,9	63,9	0,008
Coloured	2015	62,8	64,0	65,1	0,009
Coloured	2023	55,8	57,2	58,6	0,013
Indian/Asian	2006	34,1	37,8	41,5	0,050
Indian/Asian	2009	30,5	33,4	36,4	0,045
Indian/Asian	2011	21,9	24,2	26,6	0,049
Indian/Asian	2015	21,9	24,4	26,8	0,051
Indian/Asian	2023	16,5	19,7	23,0	0,084
White	2006	4,0	4,6	5,2	0,069
White	2009	4,8	5,5	6,3	0,067
White	2011	2,8	3,3	3,8	0,074
White	2015	2,6	3,2	3,8	0,096
White	2023	5,0	6,1	7,2	0,094
South Africa	**2006**	**78,2**	**78,7**	**79,1**	**0,003**
South Africa	**2009**	**75,8**	**76,2**	**76,6**	**0,003**
South Africa	**2011**	**70,6**	**71,0**	**71,4**	**0,003**
South Africa	**2015**	**70,7**	**71,1**	**71,5**	**0,003**
South Africa	**2023**	**66,2**	**66,7**	**67,1**	**0,003**

Table 6.8.7: Coefficients of variation and confidence intervals for the poverty headcount by province (FPL)

Province	Year	95% lower confidence limit	Poverty headcount	95% upper confidence limit	Coefficient of variation
Western Cape	2006	9,6	10,5	11,4	0,044
Western Cape	2009	12,4	13,2	13,9	0,028
Western Cape	2011	5,2	5,7	6,2	0,044
Western Cape	2015	8,5	9,2	9,8	0,036
Western Cape	2023	7,1	7,8	8,6	0,047
Eastern Cape	2006	34,4	35,5	36,5	0,016
Eastern Cape	2009	44,4	45,3	46,3	0,011
Eastern Cape	2011	31,1	32,0	33,0	0,015
Eastern Cape	2015	34,9	35,9	36,9	0,014
Eastern Cape	2023	22,0	22,9	23,9	0,020
Northern Cape	2006	31,8	33,2	34,7	0,022
Northern Cape	2009	30,9	32,3	33,6	0,021
Northern Cape	2011	19,7	20,9	22,0	0,029
Northern Cape	2015	21,2	22,6	23,9	0,030
Northern Cape	2023	17,4	18,8	20,2	0,039
Free State	2006	17,6	18,7	19,9	0,031
Free State	2009	28,7	29,8	30,9	0,019
Free State	2011	16,6	17,6	18,6	0,029
Free State	2015	15,5	16,5	17,5	0,031
Free State	2023	12,4	13,5	14,7	0,042
KwaZulu-Natal	2006	39,1	40,1	41,0	0,012
KwaZulu-Natal	2009	39,5	40,4	41,2	0,010
KwaZulu-Natal	2011	28,3	29,1	29,9	0,014
KwaZulu-Natal	2015	30,2	31,0	31,8	0,013
KwaZulu-Natal	2023	26,5	27,3	28,1	0,016
North West	2006	26,5	28,0	29,6	0,028
North West	2009	31,0	32,1	33,2	0,018
North West	2011	22,1	23,1	24,2	0,023
North West	2015	23,9	25,1	26,2	0,023
North West	2023	25,9	27,3	28,7	0,026
Gauteng	2006	7,6	8,2	8,9	0,041
Gauteng	2009	11,2	11,9	12,5	0,027
Gauteng	2011	7,0	7,5	8,0	0,035
Gauteng	2015	7,5	8,1	8,6	0,035
Gauteng	2023	10,2	10,7	11,2	0,026

Province	Year	95% lower confidence limit	Poverty headcount	95% upper confidence limit	Coefficient of variation
Mpumalanga	2006	33,1	34,3	35,5	0,018
Mpumalanga	2009	37,9	39,0	40,1	0,014
Mpumalanga	2011	23,1	24,0	25,0	0,019
Mpumalanga	2015	22,9	23,9	24,8	0,021
Mpumalanga	2023	13,4	14,3	15,3	0,035
Limpopo	2006	40,4	41,7	43,0	0,016
Limpopo	2009	54,6	55,6	56,6	0,009
Limpopo	2011	34,8	35,8	36,8	0,014
Limpopo	2015	38,8	39,9	40,9	0,013
Limpopo	2023	19,8	20,8	21,7	0,023
South Africa	**2006**	**27,0**	**27,4**	**27,8**	**0,007**
South Africa	**2009**	**31,3**	**31,7**	**32,0**	**0,005**
South Africa	**2011**	**20,5**	**20,8**	**21,1**	**0,007**
South Africa	**2015**	**22,1**	**22,4**	**22,7**	**0,007**
South Africa	**2023**	**17,3**	**17,6**	**17,9**	**0,009**

Table 6.8.8: Coefficients of variation and confidence intervals for the poverty headcount by province (LBPL)

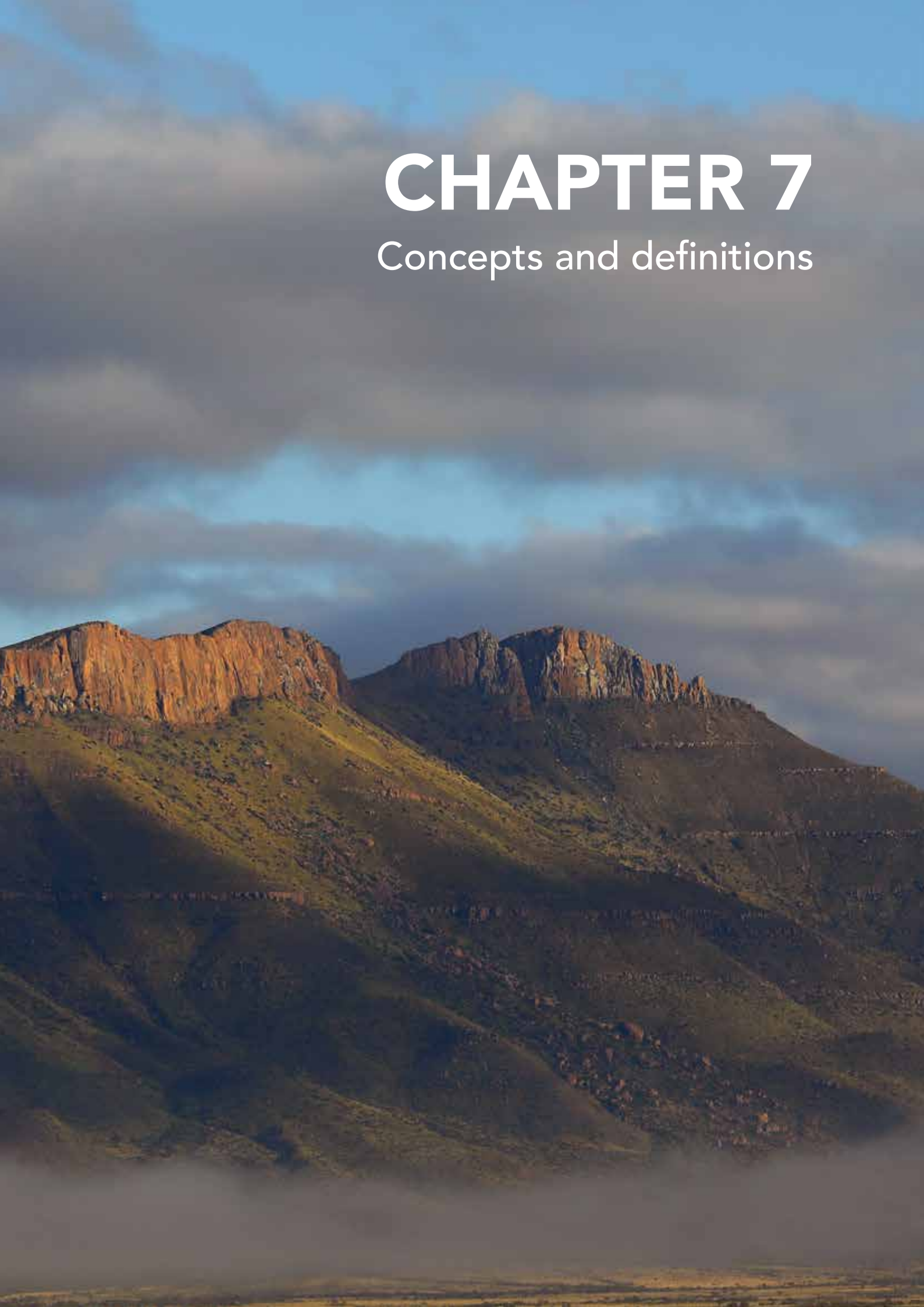
Province	Year	95% lower confidence limit	Poverty headcount	95% upper confidence limit	Coefficient of variation
Western Cape	2006	34,9	36,5	38,0	0,022
Western Cape	2009	33,4	34,4	35,5	0,015
Western Cape	2011	22,7	23,7	24,6	0,020
Western Cape	2015	28,1	29,2	30,2	0,018
Western Cape	2023	20,3	21,4	22,4	0,026
Eastern Cape	2006	68,1	69,2	70,2	0,008
Eastern Cape	2009	70,0	70,9	71,8	0,007
Eastern Cape	2011	62,3	63,3	64,2	0,008
Eastern Cape	2015	62,1	63,1	64,2	0,008
Eastern Cape	2023	47,1	48,2	49,3	0,011
Northern Cape	2006	63,1	64,6	66,0	0,012
Northern Cape	2009	62,0	63,4	64,8	0,011
Northern Cape	2011	48,6	50,0	51,5	0,015
Northern Cape	2015	49,0	50,6	52,2	0,016
Northern Cape	2023	40,4	42,3	44,1	0,022

Province	Year	95% lower confidence limit	Poverty headcount	95% upper confidence limit	Coefficient of variation
Free State	2006	50,7	52,2	53,8	0,015
Free State	2009	58,9	60,1	61,3	0,010
Free State	2011	40,3	41,6	42,9	0,016
Free State	2015	41,1	42,4	43,8	0,016
Free State	2023	32,9	34,4	36,0	0,023
KwaZulu-Natal	2006	68,9	69,9	71,0	0,008
KwaZulu-Natal	2009	63,3	64,2	65,2	0,007
KwaZulu-Natal	2011	56,0	56,9	57,8	0,008
KwaZulu-Natal	2015	58,7	59,6	60,5	0,008
KwaZulu-Natal	2023	48,6	49,6	50,5	0,010
North West	2006	56,9	59,1	61,4	0,019
North West	2009	58,5	59,7	61,0	0,011
North West	2011	48,7	49,9	51,2	0,013
North West	2015	51,4	52,8	54,1	0,013
North West	2023	47,6	49,1	50,7	0,016
Gauteng	2006	32,5	33,7	34,9	0,018
Gauteng	2009	32,0	32,9	33,8	0,014
Gauteng	2011	23,9	24,7	25,6	0,018
Gauteng	2015	25,4	26,3	27,2	0,018
Gauteng	2023	25,7	26,5	27,3	0,015
Mpumalanga	2006	65,8	67,0	68,3	0,010
Mpumalanga	2009	64,6	65,8	67,0	0,009
Mpumalanga	2011	55,2	56,3	57,4	0,010
Mpumalanga	2015	49,8	51,1	52,4	0,013
Mpumalanga	2023	37,0	38,4	39,8	0,019
Limpopo	2006	74,0	75,1	76,2	0,007
Limpopo	2009	77,3	78,3	79,2	0,006
Limpopo	2011	64,5	65,5	66,5	0,008
Limpopo	2015	65,0	66,0	67,1	0,008
Limpopo	2023	46,4	47,6	48,7	0,012
South Africa	**2006**	**57,0**	**57,5**	**58,0**	**0,004**
South Africa	**2009**	**55,3**	**55,7**	**56,1**	**0,004**
South Africa	**2011**	**45,4**	**45,8**	**46,2**	**0,004**
South Africa	**2015**	**46,3**	**46,7**	**47,1**	**0,004**
South Africa	**2023**	**37,5**	**37,9**	**38,3**	**0,005**

Table 6.8.9: Coefficients of variation and confidence intervals for the poverty headcount by province (UBPL)

Province	Year	95% lower confidence limit	Poverty headcount	95% upper confidence limit	Coefficient of variation
Western Cape	2006	64,3	65,9	67,6	0,013
Western Cape	2009	60,1	61,2	62,2	0,009
Western Cape	2011	53,8	54,8	55,9	0,010
Western Cape	2015	55,6	56,8	57,9	0,010
Western Cape	2023	49,4	50,8	52,1	0,014
Eastern Cape	2006	85,6	86,3	87,1	0,005
Eastern Cape	2009	85,7	86,4	87,1	0,004
Eastern Cape	2011	82,2	82,9	83,7	0,005
Eastern Cape	2015	80,7	81,6	82,4	0,005
Eastern Cape	2023	75,2	76,1	77,1	0,006
Northern Cape	2006	83,3	84,4	85,5	0,007
Northern Cape	2009	81,1	82,3	83,6	0,008
Northern Cape	2011	74,9	76,1	77,3	0,008
Northern Cape	2015	74,3	75,8	77,3	0,010
Northern Cape	2023	67,6	69,5	71,3	0,013
Free State	2006	74,9	76,3	77,7	0,009
Free State	2009	79,6	80,6	81,6	0,006
Free State	2011	71,0	72,2	73,4	0,008
Free State	2015	69,6	71,0	72,3	0,010
Free State	2023	64,3	65,9	67,5	0,012
KwaZulu-Natal	2006	85,3	86,2	87,1	0,005
KwaZulu-Natal	2009	81,9	82,8	83,6	0,005
KwaZulu-Natal	2011	78,2	79,0	79,7	0,005
KwaZulu-Natal	2015	79,2	79,9	80,7	0,005
KwaZulu-Natal	2023	76,3	77,2	78,1	0,006
North West	2006	76,7	79,1	81,5	0,015
North West	2009	80,5	81,6	82,8	0,007
North West	2011	75,3	76,4	77,6	0,008
North West	2015	77,9	79,0	80,1	0,007
North West	2023	75,7	77,2	78,6	0,009
Gauteng	2006	61,1	62,4	63,6	0,010
Gauteng	2009	58,4	59,5	60,5	0,009
Gauteng	2011	53,1	54,1	55,2	0,010
Gauteng	2015	54,8	55,9	56,9	0,010
Gauteng	2023	52,6	53,6	54,5	0,009

Province	Year	95% lower confidence limit	Poverty headcount	95% upper confidence limit	Coefficient of variation
Mpumalanga	2006	84,8	85,9	87,0	0,007
Mpumalanga	2009	82,6	83,7	84,8	0,007
Mpumalanga	2011	78,1	79,0	79,9	0,006
Mpumalanga	2015	76,1	77,3	78,5	0,008
Mpumalanga	2023	70,1	71,5	73,0	0,010
Limpopo	2006	89,9	90,6	91,3	0,004
Limpopo	2009	90,0	90,7	91,4	0,004
Limpopo	2011	85,3	86,0	86,7	0,004
Limpopo	2015	83,4	84,3	85,2	0,005
Limpopo	2023	78,5	79,5	80,4	0,006
South Africa	**2006**	**78,2**	**78,7**	**79,1**	**0,003**
South Africa	**2009**	**75,8**	**76,2**	**76,6**	**0,003**
South Africa	**2011**	**70,6**	**71,0**	**71,4**	**0,003**
South Africa	**2015**	**70,7**	**71,1**	**71,5**	**0,003**
South Africa	**2023**	**66,2**	**66,7**	**67,1**	**0,003**



CHAPTER 7

Concepts and definitions

Acquisition approach – An approach that takes into account the total value of goods and services actually acquired during a given period, whether fully paid for or not during that period.

Classification of individual consumption according to purpose (COICOP) – International system of classification of goods and services based on individual consumption by purpose.

Consumer price index (CPI) – An index that measures the changes in the prices of a fixed basket of consumer goods and services.

Consumption approach – An approach that takes into account the total value of all goods and services consumed (or used) during a given period.

Consumption expenditure – Expenditure on goods and services acquired, and privately used by household members, including imputed values for items produced and consumed by the household itself.

Diary – A record with discrete entries arranged by date reporting on what has happened over the course of a defined period of time. With regard to the IES and LCS, diaries recorded all acquisitions made by the household during the diary-keeping period. This included the description of the item, value, source, purpose, area of purchase and the type of retailer.

Durable goods – Consumer goods or items that last for a long time, such as kitchen appliances, computers, radios, televisions, cars and furniture, usually acquired once in several years.

Dwelling unit (DU) – Structure or part of a structure or group of structures occupied or meant to be occupied by one or more than one household.

Enumeration area (EA) – The smallest geographical unit (piece of land) into which the country is divided for census or survey purposes.

Farm – An area of land, together with its buildings, concerned with the growing of crops or the raising of animals.

Food poverty line (FPL) – A monetary threshold below which individuals cannot afford to consume enough food to meet the minimum daily energy requirement. Those living below this line are considered to be living in "extreme" poverty.

Gift – An item received by the household from people who are not members of the household or items given away by members of the household to non-members, without compensation.

Gini coefficient – The Gini coefficient is the ratio of the area between the 45-degree line and the Lorenz curve and the area of the entire triangle. As the coefficient approaches zero, the distribution of income or consumption approaches absolute equality. As the coefficient approaches one, the distribution of income or consumption approaches absolute inequality.

Household – A group of persons who live together at least four nights a week and provide themselves jointly with food and/or other essentials for living, or a single person who lives alone.

Household head – A person recognised as such by the household, usually the main decision-maker, or the person who owns or rents the dwelling, or the person who is the main breadwinner.

Household income – All receipts by all members of a household, in cash and in kind, in exchange for employment, or in return for capital investment, or receipts obtained from other sources such as social grants, pension, etc.

Income (individual) – All money received from salary, wages or own business; plus money benefits from an employer, such as contributions to medical aid and pension funds; plus all money from other sources, such as additional work activities, remittances from family members living elsewhere, state pensions or grants, other pensions or grants, income from investments, etc.

Income-in-kind / expenditure-in-kind – This refers to items acquired by the household without paying for them, e.g. bursaries, subsidies from employer, free medical services, private use of a company car or similar vehicle, value of discounted fares for educational purposes, grants from schools and other educational institutions, excluding gifts and maintenance from other household members.

Lower-bound poverty line (LBPL) – An austere monetary threshold below which individuals are choosing between sufficient food to reach the minimum daily energy requirement and essential non-food items (such as clothing, housing, transportation, etc.) due to limited resources. Calculation: Includes the cost of basic food (i.e. the FPL) plus the average non-food spending of households whose total expenditure is near the food poverty line.

Master sample – A sample drawn from a population for use on a number of future occasions, so as to avoid ad hoc sampling on each occasion.

Non-durable goods – Consumer goods or items that are completely consumed on acquisition or gradually consumed over a brief period of time after acquisition, for example food and personal care items. Households usually acquire these items on a daily, weekly or monthly basis.

Non-poor – Population or households living above a designated poverty line.

Own production – Own production is the activity of producing goods that the household can consume or sell in order to supplement the household income. Many households – especially low-income households – need to grow food items such as vegetables, mealies, etc., or to keep chickens or livestock to consume and/or sell so that they can provide more adequately for themselves.

Payment approach – An approach that takes into account the total payments made for all goods and services in a given period, whether the household has started consuming them or not.

Poor – Population or households living below a designated poverty line.

Poverty gap – This provides the mean distance of the population from the poverty line (this is also referred to as P_1).

Poverty headcount – This is the share of the population whose income or consumption is below the poverty line; that is, the share of the population that cannot meet its basic needs (this is also referred to as P_0). For household poverty analysis, the headcount is referred to as "incidence".

Poverty line – Line drawn at a particular level of income or consumption; households/individuals whose incomes fall below a given level of the poverty line or whose consumption level is valued at less than the value of the poverty line are classified as poor.

Poverty severity – This takes into account not only the distance separating the population from the poverty line (the poverty gap), but also the inequality among the poor. That is, a higher weight is placed on those households/individuals who are further away from the poverty line (this is also referred to as P_2).

Primary sampling unit (PSU) – Geographical area comprising one or more enumeration areas of the same type (not necessarily contiguous) that together have at least one hundred dwelling units.

Rural – Farms and traditional areas characterised by low population densities, low levels of economic activity and low levels of infrastructure. For analysis in this report, rural is comprised of all geo-types that are not classified as "urban".

Sample – Subset of the population where elements are selected based on a randomised process with a known probability of selection on which information can be obtained to infer about the whole population or units of interest.

Settlement type – Classification according to settlement characteristics and geo-types.

Semi-durable goods – Consumer goods or items that last longer than non-durable goods, but still need replacing more often than durable goods, for example clothing, shoes and material for clothing.

Subjective poverty – Considers that people's perception of what constitutes the minimum necessary household budget is the best standard of comparison for actual incomes and expenditures.

Traditional area – Communally owned land under the jurisdiction of a traditional leader.

Upper-bound poverty line (UBPL) – A monetary threshold at which individuals can afford both enough food to meet the minimum daily energy requirement and necessary non-food items. Calculation: Includes the cost of basic food (i.e. the FPL) plus the average non-food spending of households whose food expenditure is near the food poverty line

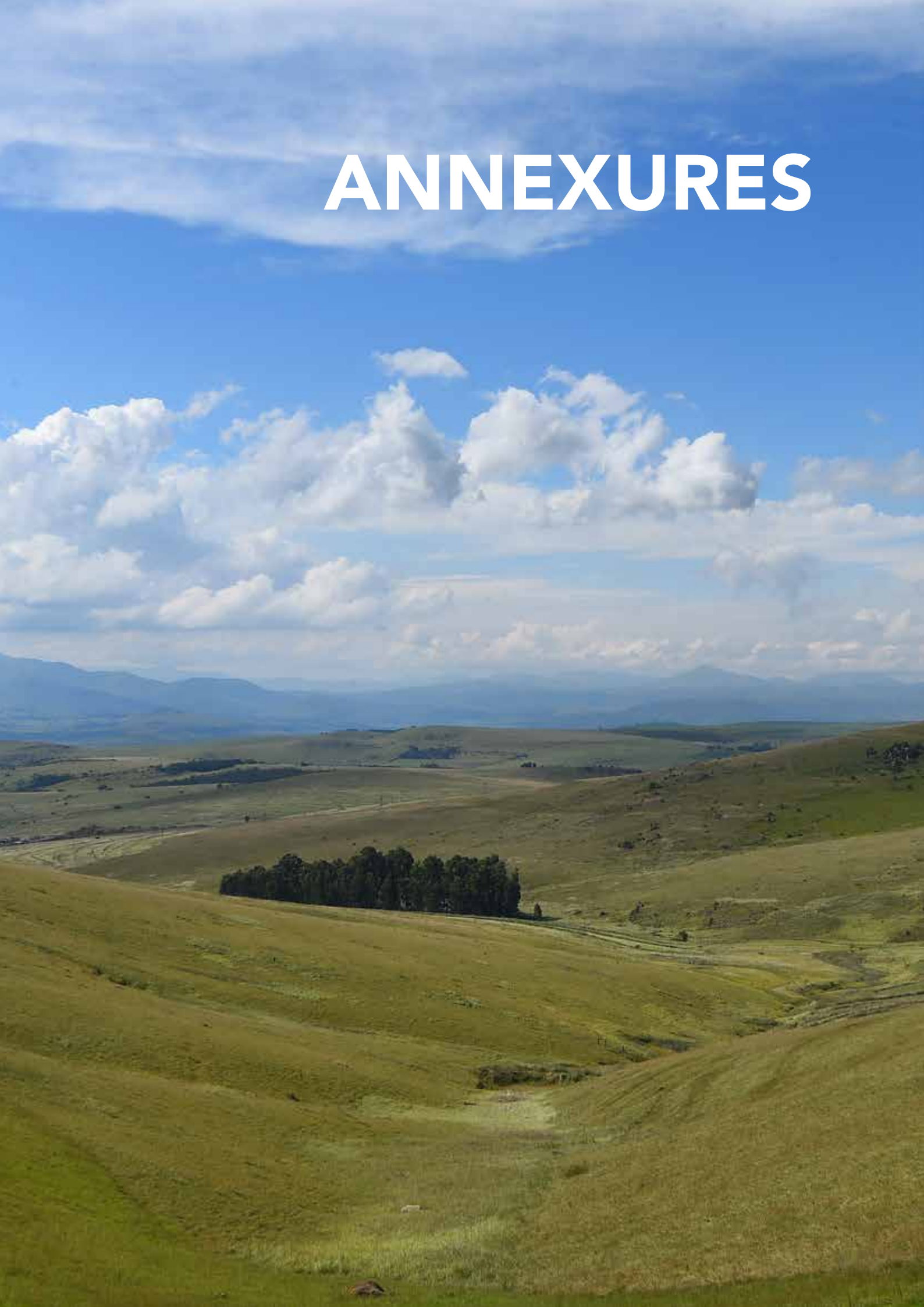
Urban – Formal cities and towns characterised by higher population densities, high levels of economic activities and high levels of infrastructure.

Vacant dwelling – Dwelling that is uninhabited, i.e. no one lives there.

Visitor (household) – Person visiting or staying with a household who is not a usual member of the household, that is, does not stay in the household four nights a week on average.

Welfare consumption aggregate – A statistical measure of a household's living standard, calculated by summing various components of consumption (purchased, own-produced, and gifted goods and services), including food and non-food items, as well as the imputed value of durable goods and housing.

ANNEXURES



Annexure A – Individual poverty measures by FPL

Annexure A provides tables based on the FPL that correspond to the LBPL-based tables found in Chapter 3 of the report. To simplify identification, the numbering of tables in the annexure corresponds to its complementary table from Chapter 3 (i.e. Table A3.4.1 matches to Table 3.4.1, etc.).

Table A3.2.1: Poverty measures by sex (FPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

	Poverty Headcount (P_0)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**27,4**	**31,7**	**20,8**	**22,4**	**17,6**
Male	25,5	30,3	19,7	21,1	16,4
Female	29,2	33,0	21,9	23,6	18,7
	Poverty Gap (P_1)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**8,9**	**11,3**	**6,6**	**7,5**	**5,1**
Male	8,3	10,8	6,3	7,1	4,8
Female	9,5	11,8	6,9	7,9	5,5
	Severity of Poverty (P_2)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**4,0**	**5,4**	**2,9**	**3,5**	**2,2**
Male	3,8	5,2	2,8	3,3	2,0
Female	4,3	5,7	3,1	3,7	2,3

Table A3.3.1: Poverty measures by population group (FPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

	Poverty Headcount (P0)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**27,4**	**31,7**	**20,8**	**22,4**	**17,6**
Black African	32,8	38,2	25,3	26,8	20,8
Coloured	14,5	16,3	8,6	11,7	7,8
Indian/Asian	1,3	1,1	0,5	0,3	1,2
White	0,1	0,4	0,1	0,0	0,3
	Poverty Gap (P1)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**8,9**	**11,3**	**6,6**	**7,5**	**5,1**
Black African	10,7	13,7	8,1	9,0	6,1
Coloured	4,3	4,8	2,3	3,3	2,0
Indian/Asian	0,8	0,0	0,2	0,1	0,3
White	0,0	0,1	0,0	0,0	0,0

	Severity of Poverty (P2)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**4,0**	**5,4**	**2,9**	**3,5**	**2,2**
Black African	4,8	6,6	3,6	4,2	2,6
Coloured	1,8	2,1	0,9	1,4	0,8
Indian/Asian	0,6	0,0	0,1	0,1	0,1
White	0,0	0,1	0,0	0,0	0,0

Table A3.4.1: Poverty measures by age (FPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

	Poverty Headcount (P_0)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**27,4**	**31,7**	**20,8**	**22,4**	**17,6**
0 – 17	36,2	42,0	27,6	30,4	24,3
18 – 24	29,1	34,1	23,2	24,4	19,4
25 – 34	18,9	24,3	16,2	18,0	16,0
35 – 44	19,3	21,6	14,5	16,4	13,6
45 – 54	18,9	22,1	14,4	14,5	10,8
55 – 64	20,5	23,9	15,6	16,7	11,4
65+	24,0	26,4	16,6	17,1	10,2
	Poverty Gap (P1)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**8,9**	**11,3**	**6,6**	**7,5**	**5,1**
0 – 17	12,1	15,3	8,9	10,5	7,2
18 – 24	9,6	12,4	7,4	8,4	5,8
25 – 34	6,0	8,5	5,0	5,9	4,7
35 – 44	6,1	7,1	4,4	5,2	3,8
45 – 54	6,1	7,7	4,7	4,7	3,1
55 – 64	6,2	8,1	4,7	5,3	3,3
65+	6,7	8,8	4,9	5,5	2,8
	Severity of Poverty (P2)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**4,0**	**5,4**	**2,9**	**3,5**	**2,2**
0 – 17	5,5	7,5	4,0	5,0	3,1
18 – 24	4,4	6,0	3,3	4,0	2,5
25 – 34	2,7	4,1	2,2	2,7	2,0
35 – 44	2,7	3,3	1,9	2,3	1,5
45 – 54	2,7	3,6	2,1	2,1	1,3
55 – 64	2,7	3,8	2,0	2,4	1,4
65+	2,8	4,1	2,0	2,5	1,1

Table A3.5.1: Poverty measures by educational level attained for individuals aged 18 years and older (FPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

	Poverty Headcount (P_0)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**21,9**	**25,8**	**17,2**	**18,3**	**14,2**
None	41,3	46,1	32,6	33,7	26,1
Some primary	34,2	41,6	29,0	32,7	22,6
Primary	30,1	35,9	25,8	30,0	21,0
Some secondary	21,8	27,9	18,5	21,1	18,9
Matric	10,2	13,5	8,9	10,0	10,9
Higher	1,5	4,0	1,7	1,5	2,1
	Poverty Gap (P_1)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**6,9**	**9,0**	**5,3**	**6,0**	**4,1**
None	13,7	16,8	10,7	12,0	8,3
Some primary	11,3	15,0	9,4	11,3	6,7
Primary	9,2	12,7	8,0	10,7	6,1
Some secondary	6,8	9,6	5,8	6,8	5,5
Matric	2,9	4,3	2,5	3,0	3,0
Higher	0,4	1,2	0,5	0,4	0,5
	Severity of Poverty (P_2)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**3,1**	**4,3**	**2,4**	**2,8**	**1,7**
None	6,3	8,2	4,8	5,7	3,9
Some primary	5,2	7,3	4,3	5,4	2,8
Primary	4,1	6,1	3,5	5,2	2,6
Some secondary	3,0	4,5	2,5	3,1	2,3
Matric	1,2	2,0	1,0	1,3	1,2
Higher	0,2	0,5	0,2	0,1	0,2

Table A3.6.1: Poverty measures by province (FPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

	Poverty Headcount (P_0)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**27,4**	**31,7**	**20,8**	**22,4**	**17,6**
Western Cape	10,5	13,2	5,7	9,2	7,8
Eastern Cape	35,5	45,3	32,0	35,9	22,9
Northern Cape	33,2	32,3	20,9	22,6	18,8
Free State	18,7	29,8	17,6	16,5	13,5
KwaZulu-Natal	40,1	40,4	29,1	31,0	27,3
North West	28,0	32,1	23,1	25,1	27,3
Gauteng	8,2	11,9	7,5	8,1	10,7
Mpumalanga	34,3	39,0	24,0	23,9	14,3
Limpopo	41,7	55,6	35,8	39,9	20,8
	Poverty Gap (P_1)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**8,9**	**11,3**	**6,6**	**7,5**	**5,1**
Western Cape	3,2	3,6	1,4	2,4	2,2
Eastern Cape	10,7	16,4	10,3	13,4	6,7
Northern Cape	11,1	11,3	5,7	7,5	5,7
Free State	4,7	9,0	4,6	4,5	3,4
KwaZulu-Natal	14,4	15,0	9,6	10,4	8,8
North West	9,3	11,1	7,7	8,9	9,3
Gauteng	2,0	3,4	2,3	2,1	2,8
Mpumalanga	11,9	14,1	6,8	7,5	3,7
Limpopo	13,7	22,4	12,2	14,6	5,3
	Severity of Poverty (P_2)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**4,0**	**5,4**	**2,9**	**3,5**	**2,2**
Western Cape	1,4	1,6	0,5	0,9	0,9
Eastern Cape	4,6	7,9	4,5	6,5	2,8
Northern Cape	4,9	5,3	2,3	3,4	2,4
Free State	1,9	3,8	1,7	1,8	1,3
KwaZulu-Natal	6,8	7,3	4,2	5,0	3,9
North West	4,3	5,4	3,5	4,2	4,4
Gauteng	0,8	1,4	1,0	0,8	1,1
Mpumalanga	5,8	7,0	2,8	3,2	1,3
Limpopo	6,1	11,3	5,9	7,2	2,0

Table A3.7.1: Poverty measures by settlement type (FPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

	Poverty Headcount (P_0)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**27,4**	**31,7**	**20,8**	**22,4**	**17,6**
Urban	13,7	17,7	11,3	11,5	12,0
Rural	47,2	55,7	37,3	43,0	28,1
	Poverty Gap (P1)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**8,9**	**11,3**	**6,6**	**7,5**	**5,1**
Urban	3,9	5,5	3,2	3,2	3,4
Rural	16,3	21,2	12,5	15,6	8,5
	Severity of Poverty (P2)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**4,0**	**5,4**	**2,9**	**3,5**	**2,2**
Urban	1,6	2,5	1,3	1,3	1,4
Rural	7,6	10,5	5,7	7,6	3,7

Table A3.8.1: Poverty measures by household size (FPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

	Poverty Headcount (P_0)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**27,4**	**31,7**	**20,8**	**22,4**	**17,6**
1 member	1,2	1,2	1,3	0,7	0,8
2 - 3 members	7,1	10,1	5,9	6,3	4,0
4 - 5 members	18,8	23,3	14,5	14,5	10,5
6 - 9 members	41,5	48,1	32,5	35,0	26,4
10+ members	65,9	71,7	54,6	57,1	58,5
	Poverty Gap (P_1)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**8,9**	**11,3**	**6,6**	**7,5**	**5,1**
1 member	0,3	0,2	0,3	0,1	0,2
2 - 3 members	1,8	2,4	1,4	1,4	1,0
4 - 5 members	5,0	6,8	4,2	4,1	2,5
6 - 9 members	13,4	17,6	10,5	11,7	7,6
10+ members	26,3	31,8	19,5	23,5	20,0
	Severity of Poverty (P_2)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**4,0**	**5,4**	**2,9**	**3,5**	**2,2**
1 member	0,2	0,1	0,1	0,0	0,1
2 - 3 members	0,7	0,9	0,5	0,5	0,4
4 - 5 members	2,0	2,8	1,8	1,7	0,9
6 - 9 members	5,9	8,4	4,6	5,4	3,1
10+ members	13,3	17,6	9,4	12,3	9,5

Table A3.9.1: Poverty measures by metropolitan municipality (FPL) (2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

	Poverty Headcount (P_0)			
	2009	2011	2015	2023
All metros	**12,9**	**9,5**	**10,5**	**11,5**
City of Cape Town	12,1	4,0	8,2	7,1
Buffalo City	*	*	13,5	13,5
Nelson Mandela Bay	14,9	20,3	17,0	12,9
eThekwini	16,8	18,6	17,9	20,6
Mangaung	*	11,4	9,0	11,0
City of Johannesburg	12,6	8,7	7,1	10,0
Ekurhuleni	9,6	5,2	8,6	9,2
City of Tshwane	12,7	6,9	8,8	12,0
	Poverty Gap (P1)			
	2009	2011	2015	2023
All metros	**3,6**	**2,8**	**2,9**	**3,2**
City of Cape Town	3,4	0,8	2,1	2,0
Buffalo City	*	*	3,9	3,0
Nelson Mandela Bay	3,8	5,1	5,9	2,7
eThekwini	4,9	6,0	5,4	6,4
Mangaung	*	3,0	2,0	2,7
City of Johannesburg	3,8	2,8	1,9	2,4
Ekurhuleni	2,4	1,8	2,4	2,6
City of Tshwane	3,3	2,0	2,1	3,3
	Severity of Poverty (P2)			
	2009	2011	2015	2023
All metros	**1,5**	**1,2**	**1,2**	**1,3**
City of Cape Town	1,5	0,3	0,8	0,8
Buffalo City	*	*	1,7	1,0
Nelson Mandela Bay	1,5	1,9	2,6	0,9
eThekwini	2,0	2,5	2,4	2,8
Mangaung	*	1,1	0,7	1,1
City of Johannesburg	1,6	1,4	0,7	0,9
Ekurhuleni	0,8	0,8	1,1	1,1
City of Tshwane	1,3	0,9	0,7	1,3

**The estimates for Buffalo City in 2009 and 2011, as well as for Mangaung in 2009 cannot be derived in those years due to geographic boundary changes.*

Annexure B – Individual poverty measures by UBPL

Annexure B provides tables based on the UBPL that correspond to the LBPL-based tables found in Chapter 3 of the report. To simplify identification, the numbering of tables in the annexure corresponds to its complementary table from Chapter 3 (i.e. Table B3.4.1 matches to Table 3.4.1, etc.).

Table B3.2.1: Poverty measures by sex (UBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

	Poverty Headcount (P_0)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**78,7**	**76,2**	**71,0**	**71,1**	**66,7**
Male	77,0	75,4	69,8	70,2	64,8
Female	80,5	77,0	72,2	72,0	68,4
	Poverty Gap (P_1)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**51,8**	**49,3**	**42,1**	**42,3**	**35,0**
Male	49,8	48,0	40,8	41,1	33,6
Female	53,7	50,5	43,4	43,4	36,3
	Severity of Poverty (P_2)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**37,7**	**35,9**	**28,9**	**28,9**	**21,9**
Male	36,0	34,7	27,8	27,9	20,8
Female	39,4	37,0	29,9	29,9	22,9

Table B3.3.1: Poverty measures by population group (UBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

	Poverty Headcount (P0)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**78,7**	**76,2**	**71,0**	**71,1**	**66,7**
Black African	88,8	86,8	81,4	80,8	74,8
Coloured	76,7	71,1	62,9	64,0	57,2
Indian/Asian	37,8	33,4	24,2	24,4	19,7
White	4,6	5,5	3,3	3,2	6,1
	Poverty Gap (P1)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**51,8**	**49,3**	**42,1**	**42,3**	**35,0**
Black African	59,7	57,6	49,3	48,9	39,9
Coloured	43,5	38,8	31,3	33,2	25,8
Indian/Asian	15,3	11,0	7,4	6,5	7,5
White	1,4	2,0	1,0	1,0	2,2

	Severity of Poverty (P2)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**37,7**	**35,9**	**28,9**	**28,9**	**21,9**
Black African	43,9	42,4	34,2	33,8	25,2
Coloured	28,7	25,4	19,0	20,7	14,5
Indian/Asian	8,3	4,9	3,3	2,6	3,7
White	0,6	1,1	0,5	0,5	1,0

Table B3.4.1: Poverty measures by age (UBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

	Poverty Headcount (P_0)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**78,7**	**76,2**	**71,0**	**71,1**	**66,7**
0 – 17	86,7	84,9	80,4	80,8	77,7
18 – 24	83,1	80,4	75,9	75,9	72,5
25 – 34	73,4	72,7	66,6	68,5	64,8
35 – 44	69,1	67,4	62,2	63,1	60,4
45 – 54	67,3	66,8	60,2	59,5	54,7
55 – 64	68,7	65,3	61,1	61,4	54,9
65+	75,9	65,0	60,7	58,5	50,9
	Poverty Gap (P1)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**51,8**	**49,3**	**42,1**	**42,3**	**35,0**
0 – 17	60,6	58,6	50,4	51,1	43,4
18 – 24	54,9	52,3	45,8	45,6	38,4
25 – 34	44,3	43,6	37,0	38,4	33,1
35 – 44	42,4	40,2	34,0	34,9	29,8
45 – 54	41,7	40,1	33,8	32,9	26,6
55 – 64	42,8	41,0	34,9	34,7	26,9
65+	49,8	42,3	35,7	34,3	24,7
	Severity of Poverty (P2)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**37,7**	**35,9**	**28,9**	**28,9**	**21,9**
0 – 17	45,5	44,1	35,6	36,2	28,0
18 – 24	40,0	38,3	31,7	31,4	24,2
25 – 34	30,7	30,5	24,5	25,5	20,4
35 – 44	29,7	27,8	22,3	23,0	18,0
45 – 54	29,4	27,9	22,4	21,5	15,9
55 – 64	30,3	29,1	23,3	23,0	16,1
65+	35,7	30,6	24,2	23,1	14,6

Table B3.5.1: Poverty measures by educational level attained for individuals aged 18 years and older (UBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

	Poverty Headcount (P_0)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**73,7**	**71,3**	**65,9**	**66,1**	**61,2**
None	94,3	91,9	90,3	84,7	83,1
Some primary	92,9	92,3	88,9	89,4	82,9
Primary	90,7	90,1	86,5	85,6	77,5
Some secondary	81,0	79,7	74,7	77,1	74,6
Matric	56,3	56,4	49,2	54,5	56,6
Higher	16,8	24,3	17,5	18,2	22,3
	Poverty Gap (P_1)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**46,3**	**44,1**	**37,6**	**37,7**	**30,8**
None	66,7	64,5	58,4	54,4	46,8
Some primary	62,7	62,6	55,0	56,0	44,4
Primary	59,0	58,0	51,5	53,3	41,4
Some secondary	49,8	49,0	42,4	44,0	38,9
Matric	31,2	30,2	24,8	27,9	26,8
Higher	7,6	11,3	7,2	7,4	8,7
	Severity of Poverty (P_2)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**32,8**	**31,3**	**25,2**	**25,1**	**18,8**
None	50,6	48,7	41,7	38,9	30,4
Some primary	46,2	46,4	38,5	39,3	28,0
Primary	42,5	41,9	35,3	37,3	26,1
Some secondary	34,8	34,4	28,2	29,4	24,2
Matric	20,4	19,7	15,5	17,4	15,7
Higher	4,4	6,8	4,0	4,0	4,5

Table B3.6.1: Poverty measures by province (UBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

	Poverty Headcount (P_0)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**78,7**	**76,2**	**71,0**	**71,1**	**66,7**
Western Cape	65,9	61,2	54,8	56,8	50,8
Eastern Cape	86,3	86,4	82,9	81,6	76,1
Northern Cape	84,4	82,3	76,1	75,8	69,5
Free State	76,3	80,6	72,2	71,0	65,9
KwaZulu-Natal	86,2	82,8	79,0	79,9	77,2
North West	79,1	81,6	76,4	79,0	77,2
Gauteng	62,4	59,5	54,1	55,9	53,6
Mpumalanga	85,9	83,7	79,0	77,3	71,5
Limpopo	90,6	90,7	86,0	84,3	79,5
	Poverty Gap (P_1)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**51,8**	**49,3**	**42,1**	**42,3**	**35,0**
Western Cape	37,5	33,3	26,2	28,9	22,8
Eastern Cape	59,8	60,7	54,2	54,2	42,0
Northern Cape	57,2	54,6	45,7	45,4	37,3
Free State	47,6	52,2	40,6	39,7	32,4
KwaZulu-Natal	60,9	56,0	50,3	51,0	44,2
North West	53,0	52,7	46,1	47,9	43,7
Gauteng	33,7	31,9	26,5	27,4	25,9
Mpumalanga	59,1	56,7	49,0	45,6	36,5
Limpopo	65,1	67,0	56,9	56,8	42,3
	Severity of Poverty (P_2)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**37,7**	**35,9**	**28,9**	**28,9**	**21,9**
Western Cape	24,4	21,5	15,3	17,7	12,9
Eastern Cape	44,8	46,2	39,1	39,7	27,0
Northern Cape	42,5	39,8	31,1	30,8	23,9
Free State	33,1	37,2	26,6	25,7	19,3
KwaZulu-Natal	46,6	42,0	35,9	36,4	29,3
North West	38,8	38,1	31,8	33,1	29,2
Gauteng	21,4	20,4	16,1	16,4	15,3
Mpumalanga	44,1	42,2	34,1	31,1	21,8
Limpopo	49,7	52,7	41,5	42,0	26,4

Table B3.7.1: Poverty measures by settlement type (UBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

	Poverty Headcount (P_0)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**78,7**	**76,2**	**71,0**	**71,1**	**66,7**
Urban	67,3	65,1	59,5	60,0	57,1
Rural	95,0	95,3	91,0	92,1	84,9
	Poverty Gap (P_1)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**51,8**	**49,3**	**42,1**	**42,3**	**35,0**
Urban	39,4	37,4	31,3	31,4	28,0
Rural	69,5	69,9	60,9	62,7	48,1
	Severity of Poverty (P_2)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**37,7**	**35,9**	**28,9**	**28,9**	**21,9**
Urban	26,4	25,2	19,9	19,7	16,8
Rural	53,9	54,4	44,5	46,4	31,5

Table B3.8.1: Poverty measures by household size (UBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

	Poverty Headcount (P_0)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**78,7**	**76,2**	**71,0**	**71,1**	**66,7**
1 member	42,1	41,8	35,7	35,4	20,7
2 - 3 members	61,3	61,5	52,9	52,6	46,2
4 - 5 members	74,1	70,9	65,5	65,5	63,8
6 - 9 members	94,1	90,5	88,0	88,0	86,1
10+ members	99,7	98,8	97,4	97,7	98,5
	Poverty Gap (P_1)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**51,8**	**49,3**	**42,1**	**42,3**	**35,0**
1 member	16,6	15,7	13,0	12,0	6,3
2 - 3 members	32,8	32,6	25,6	24,7	18,6
4 - 5 members	46,4	43,4	36,8	36,1	30,0
6 - 9 members	66,6	63,8	56,3	57,1	49,1
10+ members	79,2	77,7	71,2	71,9	68,0
	Severity of Poverty (P_2)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**37,7**	**35,9**	**28,9**	**28,9**	**21,9**
1 member	8,6	7,8	6,5	5,6	2,8
2 - 3 members	20,6	20,3	15,1	14,2	9,7
4 - 5 members	32,3	30,2	24,1	23,3	17,3
6 - 9 members	50,6	48,7	40,3	40,9	31,7
10+ members	64,6	63,6	55,0	55,8	50,2

Table B3.9.1: Poverty measures by metropolitan municipality (UBPL) (2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

	Poverty Headcount (P_0)			
	2009	2011	2015	2023
All metros	**60,4**	**56,2**	**57,7**	**54,7**
City of Cape Town	57,7	50,4	52,7	47,9
Buffalo City	*	*	63,9	63,9
Nelson Mandela Bay	67,6	63,7	60,2	55,7
eThekwini	66,1	66,2	66,6	66,9
Mangaung	*	66,0	56,1	58,7
City of Johannesburg	61,0	56,9	53,6	50,9
Ekurhuleni	59,5	54,1	61,3	54,3
City of Tshwane	52,5	46,7	53,3	53,9
	Poverty Gap (P_1)			
	2009	2011	2015	2023
All metros	**32,5**	**28,4**	**29,6**	**26,7**
City of Cape Town	30,4	22,7	26,1	21,1
Buffalo City	*	*	34,3	31,3
Nelson Mandela Bay	37,7	37,9	35,4	27,7
eThekwini	36,5	38,0	37,2	36,5
Mangaung	*	34,5	28,4	28,3
City of Johannesburg	32,4	28,2	25,7	24,3
Ekurhuleni	31,7	25,7	30,5	25,0
City of Tshwane	28,7	21,9	26,2	27,4
	Severity of Poverty (P_2)			
	2009	2011	2015	2023
All metros	**21,0**	**17,6**	**18,3**	**16,0**
City of Cape Town	19,5	12,8	15,9	11,8
Buffalo City	*	*	22,1	18,5
Nelson Mandela Bay	24,6	26,0	24,0	16,5
eThekwini	24,2	25,5	24,8	23,6
Mangaung	*	21,4	17,2	16,7
City of Johannesburg	20,6	17,4	15,0	14,2
Ekurhuleni	20,0	15,0	18,3	14,4
City of Tshwane	18,6	13,2	16,0	16,6

**The estimates for Buffalo City in 2009 and 2011, as well as for Mangaung in 2009 cannot be derived in those years due to geographic boundary changes.*

Annexure C – Individual poverty shares by FPL

Annexure C provides tables based on the FPL that correspond to the LBPL-based tables found in Chapter 3 of the report. To simplify identification, the numbering of tables in the annexure corresponds to its complementary table from Chapter 3 (i.e. Table C3.4.2 matches to Table 3.4.2, etc.).

Table C3.2.2: Poverty shares by sex (FPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

Sex	Poverty shares				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**
Male	45,7	46,3	45,9	45,9	45,7
Female	53,9	53,7	54,1	54,1	54,3

Table C3.3.2: Poverty shares by population group (FPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

Population group	Poverty shares				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**
Black African	94,7	95,1	96,2	95,3	95,8
Coloured	4,7	4,7	3,7	4,6	3,9
Indian/Asian	0,1	0,1	0,1	0,0	0,2
White	0,0	0,1	0,1	0,0	0,1

Table C3.4.2: Poverty shares by age (FPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

Age group	Poverty shares				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**
0-17	50,7	47,7	46,8	46,5	46,1
18-24	14,7	15,8	16,0	14,1	11,9
25-34	11,8	12,9	13,5	15,1	15,8
35-44	7,8	8,4	8,7	9,4	12,0
45-54	5,8	6,4	6,3	5,9	6,2
55-64	4,3	4,5	4,6	4,8	4,4
65+	4,4	4,3	4,2	4,2	3,6

Table C3.5.2: Poverty shares by educational level attained for individuals aged 18 years and older (FPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

Educational level	Poverty shares				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**100**	**100**	**99**	**100**	**100**
None	18,8	15,3	12,1	11,6	6,3
Some primary	23,6	21,5	22,5	18,6	13,3
Primary	9,0	7,9	8,1	8,5	5,9
Some secondary	38,1	43,4	44,5	45,9	47,7
Matric	9,9	9,9	11,0	14,4	24,2
Higher	0,6	2,1	1,2	1,0	2,5

Table C3.6.2: Poverty shares by province (FPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

Province	Poverty shares				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**
Western Cape	3,8	4,6	3,1	4,7	5,3
Eastern Cape	18,7	18,8	19,6	19,3	14,2
Northern Cape	2,9	2,3	2,2	2,2	2,3
Free State	4,3	5,2	4,5	3,8	3,7
KwaZulu-Natal	30,6	25,6	27,8	27,0	29,5
North West	7,1	6,8	7,5	7,6	10,8
Gauteng	6,1	8,6	8,4	8,9	16,3
Mpumalanga	9,3	9,6	9,0	8,3	6,4
Limpopo	17,2	18,6	17,9	18,1	11,5

Table C3.7.2: Poverty shares by settlement type (FPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

Settlement type	Poverty shares				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**
Urban	29,4	35,5	34,4	33,5	44,8
Rural	70,6	64,5	65,6	66,5	55,2

Table C3.8.2: Poverty shares by household size (FPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

Household size	Poverty shares				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**
1 member	0,2	0,2	0,3	0,1	0,3
2 - 3 members	5,5	7,4	6,3	6,6	5,4
4 - 5 members	21,8	23,2	22,6	20,3	19,4
6 - 9 members	47,2	48,0	50,9	48,4	42,3
10+ members	25,2	21,3	19,9	24,7	32,6

Table C3.9.2: Poverty shares by metropolitan municipality (FPL) (2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

Metropolitan municipality	Poverty shares			
	2009	2011	2015	2023
All metros	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**
City of Cape Town	18,9	8,2	14,8	11,4
Buffalo City	*	*	4,9	3,5
Nelson Mandela Bay	7,7	12,0	8,4	5,2
eThekwini	24,6	34,6	29,5	27,7
Mangaung	*	5,6	2,9	3,1
City of Johannesburg	22,5	20,1	14,8	20,5
Ekurhuleni	13,1	9,3	13,4	12,8
City of Tshwane	13,1	10,2	11,3	15,8

**The estimates for Buffalo City in 2009 and 2011, as well as for Mangaung in 2009 cannot be derived in those years due to geographic boundary changes.*

Annexure D – Individual poverty shares by UBPL

Annexure D provides tables based on the UBPL that correspond to the LBPL-based tables found in Chapter 3 of the report. To simplify identification, the numbering of tables in the annexure corresponds to its complementary table from Chapter 3 (i.e. Table D3.4.2 matches to Table 3.4.2, etc.).

Table D3.2.2: Poverty shares by sex (UBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

Sex	Poverty shares				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**
Male	48,0	47,9	47,7	48,1	47,5
Female	51,7	52,1	52,3	51,9	52,5

Table D3.3.2: Poverty shares by population group (UBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

Population group	Poverty shares				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**
Black African	89,4	89,7	90,7	90,7	91,0
Coloured	8,6	8,4	8,0	8,0	7,6
Indian/Asian	1,2	1,1	0,9	0,9	0,8
White	0,5	0,7	0,4	0,4	0,7

Table D3.4.2: Poverty shares by age (UBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

Age group	Poverty shares				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**
0-17	42,3	40,1	40,0	39,0	38,8
18-24	14,6	15,4	15,4	13,8	11,7
25-34	15,9	16,0	16,3	18,1	16,9
35-44	9,7	10,9	10,9	11,4	14,0
45-54	7,3	8,0	7,7	7,7	8,2
55-64	5,0	5,1	5,3	5,5	5,6
65+	4,8	4,4	4,5	4,6	4,8

Table D3.5.2: Poverty shares by educational level attained for individuals aged 18 years and older (UBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

Educational level	Poverty shares				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**
None	12,7	11,1	8,8	8,0	4,7
Some primary	19,0	17,3	17,9	14,0	11,3
Primary	8,1	7,2	7,1	6,7	5,0
Some secondary	41,9	45,0	46,6	46,3	43,6
Matric	16,3	15,0	15,9	21,6	29,2
Higher	2,0	4,5	3,2	3,4	6,1

Table D3.6.2: Poverty shares by province (UBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

Province	Poverty shares				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**
Western Cape	8,4	8,9	8,7	9,2	9,1
Eastern Cape	15,9	14,9	14,9	13,8	12,4
Northern Cape	2,6	2,4	2,4	2,3	2,2
Free State	6,1	5,8	5,5	5,1	4,7
KwaZulu-Natal	22,9	21,8	22,1	22,0	22,0
North West	7,0	7,2	7,3	7,6	8,0
Gauteng	16,0	17,9	18,0	19,4	21,5
Mpumalanga	8,1	8,5	8,7	8,5	8,4
Limpopo	13,1	12,6	12,6	12,1	11,6

Table D3.7.2: Poverty shares by settlement type (UBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

Settlement type	Poverty shares				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**
Urban	50,5	54,1	53,1	55,1	56,0
Rural	49,5	45,9	46,9	44,9	44,0

Table D3.8.2: Poverty shares by household size (UBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

Household size	Poverty shares				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**
1 member	2,7	2,5	2,4	2,4	1,9
2 - 3 members	16,6	18,5	16,7	17,1	16,4
4 - 5 members	30,0	29,3	30,1	28,8	31,0
6 - 9 members	37,4	37,5	40,4	38,3	36,3
10+ members	13,3	12,2	10,4	13,3	14,5

Table D3.9.2: Poverty shares by metropolitan municipality (UBPL) (2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

Metropolitan municipality	Poverty shares			
	2009	2011	2015	2023
All metros	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**
City of Cape Town	19,3	17,5	17,2	16,2
Buffalo City	*	*	4,2	3,5
Nelson Mandela Bay	7,5	6,3	5,4	4,7
eThekwini	20,8	20,7	19,9	19,1
Mangaung	*	5,5	3,3	3,5
City of Johannesburg	23,4	22,0	20,3	22,1
Ekurhuleni	17,4	16,3	17,3	16,0
City of Tshwane	11,7	11,6	12,4	15,0

**The estimates for Buffalo City in 2009 and 2011, as well as for Mangaung in 2009 cannot be derived in those years due to geographic boundary changes.*

Annexure E – Household poverty measures by FPL

Annexure E provides tables based on the FPL that correspond to the LBPL-based tables found in Chapter 4 of the report. To simplify identification, the numbering of tables in the annexure corresponds to its complementary table from Chapter 4 (i.e. Table E4.4.1 matches to Table 4.4.1, etc.).

Table E4.2.1: Household poverty measures by sex of the household head (FPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

	Poverty Incidence (P_0)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**16,5**	**19,4**	**12,1**	**12,8**	**8,7**
Male	11,8	14,5	8,7	8,7	6,3
Female	23,8	26,3	16,8	18,3	11,8
	Poverty Gap (P_1)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**5,0**	**6,3**	**3,6**	**3,9**	**2,3**
Male	3,5	4,5	2,6	2,5	1,7
Female	7,3	8,7	5,0	5,7	3,2
	Severity of Poverty (P_2)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**2,2**	**2,8**	**1,5**	**1,7**	**0,9**
Male	1,5	2,0	1,1	1,1	0,6
Female	3,2	4,0	2,2	2,5	1,3

Table E4.3.1: Household poverty measures by population group of the household head (FPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

	Poverty Incidence (P_0)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**16,5**	**19,4**	**12,1**	**12,8**	**8,7**
Black African	20,5	24,0	14,8	15,3	10,2
Coloured	9,9	9,7	6,0	7,4	4,2
Indian/Asian	0,7	0,2	0,4	0,3	0,6
White	0,0	0,2	0,0	0,0	0,1
	Poverty Gap (P_1)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**5,0**	**6,3**	**3,6**	**3,9**	**2,3**
Black African	6,2	7,8	4,5	4,7	2,7
Coloured	2,9	2,7	1,5	1,9	1,0
Indian/Asian	0,4	0,0	0,1	0,1	0,1
White	0,0	0,1	0,0	0,0	0,0

	Severity of Poverty (P_2)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**2,2**	**2,8**	**1,5**	**1,7**	**0,9**
Black African	2,7	3,5	1,9	2,0	1,1
Coloured	1,2	1,1	0,5	0,7	0,4
Indian/Asian	0,3	0,0	0,1	0,0	0,0
White	0,0	0,0	0,0	0,0	0,0

Table E4.4.1: Household poverty measures by age of the household head (FPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

	Poverty Incidence (P_0)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**16,5**	**19,4**	**12,1**	**12,8**	**8,7**
0 – 17	15,7	29,0	14,8	17,4	17,9
18 – 24	11,4	14,2	8,6	8,6	4,8
25 – 34	10,3	14,2	8,0	8,5	7,0
35 – 44	15,3	18,2	11,8	12,0	8,9
45 – 54	17,6	20,2	13,4	13,9	9,2
55 – 64	20,2	23,8	14,6	16,4	10,4
65+	24,7	26,2	16,5	17,5	9,4
	Poverty Gap (P_1)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**5,0**	**6,3**	**3,6**	**3,9**	**2,3**
0 – 17	5,5	9,3	4,5	2,5	3,6
18 – 24	3,5	4,4	2,6	2,2	1,1
25 – 34	2,9	4,2	2,2	2,3	1,9
35 – 44	4,8	5,7	3,3	3,6	2,3
45 – 54	5,8	7,0	4,3	4,4	2,5
55 – 64	6,2	8,0	4,5	5,1	2,9
65+	7,0	8,6	4,9	5,5	2,4
	Severity of Poverty (P_2)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**2,2**	**2,8**	**1,5**	**1,7**	**0,9**
0 – 17	2,8	4,2	2,0	0,7	1,1
18 – 24	1,4	1,9	1,2	0,9	0,4
25 – 34	1,2	1,8	1,0	1,0	0,7
35 – 44	2,1	2,4	1,4	1,5	0,9
45 – 54	2,6	3,3	1,9	2,0	1,0
55 – 64	2,7	3,7	1,9	2,3	1,2
65+	2,9	3,9	2,0	2,4	1,0

Table E4.5.1: Household poverty measures by educational level of the household head(FPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

	Poverty Incidence (P_0)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**16,5**	**19,3**	**12,1**	**12,7**	**8,7**
None	39,1	43,0	29,8	34,0	21,8
Some primary	27,9	34,6	23,2	26,0	18,5
Primary	21,1	26,1	17,8	23,2	15,8
Some secondary	11,2	16,3	9,9	11,5	10,7
Matric	3,3	5,5	3,3	3,2	4,9
Higher	0,4	1,5	0,7	0,6	0,7
	Poverty Gap (P_1)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**5,0**	**6,2**	**3,6**	**3,9**	**2,3**
None	12,7	15,1	9,6	11,8	6,7
Some primary	8,8	11,9	7,2	8,2	5,0
Primary	5,9	8,0	5,2	7,4	4,3
Some secondary	3,0	4,8	2,7	3,0	2,7
Matric	0,9	1,4	0,9	0,8	1,3
Higher	0,1	0,4	0,2	0,1	0,1
	Severity of Poverty (P_2)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**2,2**	**2,8**	**1,5**	**1,7**	**0,9**
None	5,7	7,1	4,3	5,5	3,0
Some primary	3,8	5,6	3,2	3,7	2,0
Primary	2,5	3,5	2,1	3,3	1,8
Some secondary	1,2	2,0	1,1	1,2	1,0
Matric	0,4	0,5	0,3	0,3	0,5
Higher	0,0	0,2	0,1	0,0	0,0

Table E4.6.1: Household poverty measures by province (FPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

	Poverty Incidence (P_0)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**16,5**	**19,4**	**12,1**	**12,8**	**8,7**
Western Cape	6,3	7,2	3,0	5,0	4,0
Eastern Cape	23,3	28,5	19,5	21,4	10,9
Northern Cape	21,1	20,2	13,9	13,4	12,1
Free State	11,9	19,2	11,2	10,3	7,4
KwaZulu-Natal	24,9	25,2	17,1	17,9	12,4
North West	17,4	20,4	14,0	14,4	14,0
Gauteng	4,4	7,4	4,0	4,7	5,7
Mpumalanga	22,4	25,3	12,7	16,1	8,4
Limpopo	28,5	40,4	25,4	24,5	11,2
	Poverty Gap (P_1)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**5,0**	**6,3**	**3,6**	**3,9**	**2,3**
Western Cape	1,9	1,8	0,7	1,1	1,1
Eastern Cape	6,8	9,3	6,1	7,1	2,7
Northern Cape	6,8	6,3	3,5	4,0	3,3
Free State	2,8	5,3	2,8	2,6	1,7
KwaZulu-Natal	8,2	8,6	5,4	5,6	3,6
North West	5,4	6,2	4,1	4,5	4,2
Gauteng	1,1	1,9	1,1	1,2	1,4
Mpumalanga	7,2	8,3	3,5	4,7	2,2
Limpopo	8,5	14,8	7,9	8,1	2,7
	Severity of Poverty (P_2)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**2,2**	**2,8**	**1,5**	**1,7**	**0,9**
Western Cape	0,8	0,7	0,3	0,4	0,5
Eastern Cape	2,8	4,2	2,6	3,2	1,0
Northern Cape	3,0	2,8	1,4	1,7	1,4
Free State	1,0	2,1	1,0	1,0	0,6
KwaZulu-Natal	3,7	4,0	2,3	2,5	1,5
North West	2,4	2,8	1,7	2,0	1,8
Gauteng	0,5	0,7	0,5	0,4	0,6
Mpumalanga	3,3	3,9	1,5	1,9	0,8
Limpopo	3,6	7,0	3,5	3,8	0,9

Table E4.7.1: Household poverty measures by settlement type (FPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

	Poverty Incidence (P_0)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**16,5**	**19,4**	**12,1**	**12,8**	**8,7**
Urban	7,8	10,3	6,4	6,3	6,3
Rural	32,8	39,0	24,5	27,8	14,4
	Poverty Gap (P_1)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**5,0**	**6,3**	**3,6**	**3,9**	**2,3**
Urban	2,1	2,9	1,7	1,6	1,6
Rural	10,5	13,5	7,8	9,1	3,9
	Severity of Poverty (P_2)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**2,2**	**2,8**	**1,5**	**1,7**	**0,9**
Urban	0,9	1,2	0,7	0,6	0,6
Rural	4,6	6,4	3,5	4,1	1,6

Table E4.8.1: Household poverty measures by household size (FPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

	Poverty Incidence (P_0)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**16,5**	**19,4**	**12,1**	**12,8**	**8,7**
1 member	1,2	1,1	1,3	0,6	0,9
2 - 3 members	6,5	9,7	5,9	6,3	3,9
4 - 5 members	18,3	24,3	14,9	15,5	11,0
6 - 9 members	40,4	48,1	32,3	36,1	26,5
10+ members	65,3	71,2	54,9	58,6	57,1
	Poverty Gap (P_1)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**5,0**	**6,3**	**3,6**	**3,9**	**2,3**
1 member	0,3	0,2	0,3	0,1	0,2
2 - 3 members	1,6	2,3	1,4	1,4	1,0
4 - 5 members	4,9	7,1	4,3	4,4	2,6
6 - 9 members	12,9	17,5	10,3	12,0	7,3
10+ members	25,7	31,1	19,4	23,3	19,3
	Severity of Poverty (P_2)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**2,2**	**2,8**	**1,5**	**1,7**	**0,9**
1 member	0,2	0,1	0,1	0,0	0,1
2 - 3 members	0,6	0,8	0,5	0,5	0,4
4 - 5 members	1,9	3,0	1,8	1,8	0,9
6 - 9 members	5,7	8,3	4,6	5,5	3,0
10+ members	12,9	17,1	9,1	11,9	9,0

Table E4.9.1: Household poverty measures by metropolitan municipality (FPL) (2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

	Poverty Incidence (P_0)			
	2009	2011	2015	2023
All metros	**7,2**	**5,1**	**5,6**	**6,1**
City of Cape Town	6,4	2,1	3,9	3,5
Buffalo City	*	*	8,7	10,3
Nelson Mandela Bay	6,8	11,2	7,1	6,7
eThekwini	8,7	9,9	10,0	10,4
Mangaung	*	8,0	5,6	6,2
City of Johannesburg	7,1	5,3	4,6	5,5
Ekurhuleni	6,5	2,6	4,1	4,8
City of Tshwane	8,0	3,5	4,9	6,0
	Poverty Gap (P_1)			
	2009	2011	2015	2023
All metros	**1,9**	**1,4**	**1,4**	**1,5**
City of Cape Town	1,7	0,5	0,9	0,9
Buffalo City	*	*	2,5	2,4
Nelson Mandela Bay	1,6	2,6	2,0	1,4
eThekwini	2,4	3,0	2,9	2,8
Mangaung	*	1,9	1,1	1,4
City of Johannesburg	2,0	1,5	1,1	1,4
Ekurhuleni	1,5	0,8	1,0	1,3
City of Tshwane	1,8	1,0	1,1	1,4
	Severity of Poverty (P_2)			
	2009	2011	2015	2023
All metros	**0,7**	**0,6**	**0,6**	**0,6**
City of Cape Town	0,7	0,2	0,3	0,4
Buffalo City	*	*	1,1	0,9
Nelson Mandela Bay	0,6	1,0	0,8	0,5
eThekwini	0,9	1,2	1,2	1,1
Mangaung	*	0,7	0,4	0,5
City of Johannesburg	0,8	0,6	0,4	0,5
Ekurhuleni	0,5	0,4	0,4	0,6
City of Tshwane	0,7	0,4	0,3	0,5

**The estimates for Buffalo City in 2009 and 2011, as well as for Mangaung in 2009 cannot be derived in those years due to geographic boundary changes.*

Annexure F – Household poverty measures by UBPL

Annexure F provides tables based on the UBPL that correspond to the LBPL-based tables found in Chapter 4 of the report. To simplify identification, the numbering of tables in the annexure corresponds to its complementary table from Chapter 4 (i.e. Table F4.4.1 matches to Table 4.4.1, etc.).

Table F4.2.1: Household poverty measures by sex of the household head (UBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

	Poverty Incidence (P_0)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**67,4**	**65,8**	**59,1**	**59,1**	**50,4**
Male	60,4	59,8	52,1	52,3	43,5
Female	78,5	74,4	69,1	68,5	59,4
	Poverty Gap (P_1)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**40,1**	**38,3**	**31,6**	**31,1**	**23,2**
Male	33,6	32,7	26,1	25,5	18,8
Female	50,4	46,3	39,3	38,8	28,8
	Severity of Poverty (P_2)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**27,5**	**26,1**	**20,3**	**19,8**	**13,4**
Male	22,2	21,5	16,2	15,5	10,5
Female	36,0	32,7	26,1	25,7	17,1

Table F4.3.1: Household poverty measures by population group of the household head (UBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

	Poverty Incidence (P_0)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**67,4**	**65,8**	**59,1**	**59,1**	**50,4**
Black African	79,4	77,5	69,6	68,5	56,9
Coloured	67,7	63,2	53,8	53,9	43,9
Indian/Asian	29,6	21,9	17,4	17,9	14,9
White	3,3	3,2	2,3	2,1	2,9
	Poverty Gap (P_1)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**40,1**	**38,3**	**31,6**	**31,1**	**23,2**
Black African	48,1	46,0	37,7	36,5	26,4
Coloured	36,0	31,4	25,6	25,6	18,3
Indian/Asian	11,4	6,2	5,3	5,1	5,0
White	1,0	1,0	0,6	0,7	1,1
	Severity of Poverty (P_2)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**27,5**	**26,1**	**20,3**	**19,8**	**13,4**
Black African	33,3	31,6	24,4	23,3	15,3
Coloured	22,9	19,3	15,1	15,2	9,8
Indian/Asian	6,0	2,5	2,3	2,1	2,2
White	0,4	0,5	0,3	0,3	0,5

Table F4.4.1: Household poverty measures by age of the household head (UBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

	Poverty Incidence (P_0)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**67,4**	**65,8**	**59,1**	**59,1**	**50,4**
0 – 17	75,3	86,0	74,9	76,2	58,3
18 – 24	64,2	66,9	57,4	58,5	45,4
25 – 34	62,1	62,9	54,2	55,9	45,7
35 – 44	64,8	64,4	58,4	57,9	51,8
45 – 54	66,3	66,1	59,4	59,4	51,0
55 – 64	70,3	68,0	63,3	62,9	53,2
65+	79,5	68,7	64,3	61,9	52,1
	Poverty Gap (P_1)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**40,2**	**38,3**	**31,6**	**31,1**	**23,2**
0 – 17	40,2	52,1	41,9	42,3	29,6
18 – 24	35,9	37,0	29,2	28,0	18,7
25 – 34	33,4	33,4	26,3	26,8	20,0
35 – 44	38,0	36,8	30,6	29,8	23,5
45 – 54	40,5	39,0	32,6	32,2	24,1
55 – 64	42,9	42,1	35,5	34,8	25,5
65+	52,2	43,9	37,3	35,9	24,5
	Severity of Poverty (P_2)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**27,6**	**26,1**	**20,3**	**19,8**	**13,4**
0 – 17	25,7	36,3	27,0	26,6	18,2
18 – 24	23,6	24,1	18,2	16,7	10,0
25 – 34	21,5	21,6	16,0	16,1	11,2
35 – 44	26,0	24,8	19,5	18,8	13,5
45 – 54	28,3	26,8	21,4	20,8	14,1
55 – 64	30,1	29,6	23,4	22,8	15,1
65+	37,3	31,5	25,0	24,0	14,2

Table F4.5.1: Household poverty measures by educational level of the household head (UBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

	Poverty Incidence (P_0)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**67,4**	**65,6**	**59,0**	**59,1**	**50,3**
None	94,3	92,5	90,6	85,7	84,1
Some primary	90,3	90,7	86,0	86,9	77,3
Primary	88,3	85,0	82,3	82,2	69,0
Some secondary	71,6	72,2	64,1	68,1	63,4
Matric	39,7	42,4	37,0	41,7	41,8
Higher	10,7	16,3	10,9	11,8	13,1
	Poverty Gap (P_1)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**40,2**	**38,2**	**31,5**	**31,1**	**23,1**
None	65,7	63,5	57,1	54,7	45,0
Some primary	57,9	58,3	50,5	51,3	38,9
Primary	53,3	50,8	45,3	47,2	34,6
Some secondary	39,2	39,3	32,0	34,3	29,4
Matric	18,8	19,3	15,9	17,4	17,3
Higher	3,9	6,6	4,0	4,1	4,3
	Severity of Poverty (P_2)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**27,6**	**26,0**	**20,2**	**19,8**	**13,4**
None	49,4	47,2	40,1	39,0	28,3
Some primary	41,4	41,8	34,2	34,5	23,8
Primary	36,6	34,8	29,5	31,5	21,0
Some secondary	25,3	25,5	19,7	21,0	16,9
Matric	11,0	11,2	8,9	9,5	9,4
Higher	2,0	3,6	2,0	2,0	2,0

Table F4.6.1: Household poverty measures by province (UBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 015 and 2023)

	Poverty Incidence (P_0)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**67,4**	**65,8**	**59,1**	**59,1**	**50,4**
Western Cape	54,0	49,2	42,1	42,9	37,2
Eastern Cape	77,9	76,6	73,5	72,2	57,9
Northern Cape	73,4	73,3	62,7	63,2	54,3
Free State	66,2	71,4	64,3	61,6	53,0
KwaZulu-Natal	73,6	70,7	66,5	67,3	56,9
North West	69,5	74,1	64,2	68,8	60,6
Gauteng	52,0	51,2	43,7	45,4	39,9
Mpumalanga	77,9	76,4	65,7	67,3	59,7
Limpopo	82,3	84,5	79,1	74,0	63,0
	Poverty Gap (P_1)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**40,1**	**38,3**	**31,6**	**31,1**	**23,2**
Western Cape	28,5	24,2	18,6	19,6	15,1
Eastern Cape	49,7	48,3	43,3	42,3	27,7
Northern Cape	44,8	43,3	34,9	34,1	26,1
Free State	37,3	41,9	32,8	31,0	23,5
KwaZulu-Natal	46,8	43,0	37,7	37,7	28,1
North West	42,3	42,6	34,6	36,4	29,2
Gauteng	25,4	25,2	19,5	20,3	17,2
Mpumalanga	49,1	46,9	35,9	36,3	27,2
Limpopo	54,5	57,5	48,2	44,1	29,9
	Severity of Poverty (P_2)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**27,5**	**26,1**	**20,3**	**19,8**	**13,4**
Western Cape	17,7	14,7	10,4	11,2	8,0
Eastern Cape	35,4	34,4	29,4	28,7	16,2
Northern Cape	31,5	29,5	22,8	21,8	15,9
Free State	24,5	28,2	20,3	18,8	13,1
KwaZulu-Natal	33,8	30,3	25,2	25,0	17,0
North West	29,2	28,7	22,3	23,1	17,7
Gauteng	15,2	15,2	11,2	11,5	9,5
Mpumalanga	34,8	32,8	23,1	23,5	15,3
Limpopo	39,5	43,0	33,4	30,3	17,4

Table F4.7.1: Household poverty measures by settlement type (UBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

	Poverty Incidence (P_0)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**67,4**	**65,8**	**59,1**	**59,1**	**50,4**
Urban	55,5	54,7	48,5	48,3	42,8
Rural	89,7	89,9	82,4	84,5	68,0
	Poverty Gap (P_1)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**40,1**	**38,3**	**31,6**	**31,1**	**23,2**
Urban	29,4	28,4	23,2	22,6	18,7
Rural	60,1	59,7	49,9	51,1	33,4
	Severity of Poverty (P_2)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**27,5**	**26,1**	**20,3**	**19,8**	**13,4**
Urban	18,7	17,9	13,8	13,2	10,5
Rural	44,1	43,8	34,4	35,2	20,0

Table F4.8.1: Household poverty measures by household size (UBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

	Poverty Incidence (P_0)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**67,4**	**65,8**	**59,1**	**59,1**	**50,4**
1 member	42,1	40,8	35,3	34,5	20,6
2 - 3 members	60,2	61,2	53,5	54,1	46,8
4 - 5 members	73,4	72,7	67,1	68,0	65,0
6 - 9 members	93,7	91,0	88,2	88,7	86,5
10+ members	99,7	98,9	97,3	97,8	98,3
	Poverty Gap (P_1)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**40,1**	**38,3**	**31,6**	**31,1**	**23,2**
1 member	16,6	15,3	12,8	11,7	6,2
2 - 3 members	31,7	32,1	25,8	25,3	18,7
4 - 5 members	45,8	44,8	37,8	37,9	30,8
6 - 9 members	65,9	64,2	56,5	57,9	49,1
10+ members	78,9	77,4	71,1	72,1	67,5
	Severity of Poverty (P_2)				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**27,5**	**26,1**	**20,3**	**19,8**	**13,4**
1 member	8,6	7,6	6,4	5,4	2,8
2 - 3 members	19,7	19,9	15,2	14,5	9,6
4 - 5 members	31,8	31,3	24,8	24,6	17,8
6 - 9 members	49,8	48,9	40,3	41,6	31,7
10+ members	64,2	63,2	54,9	56,0	49,5

Table F4.9.1: Household poverty measures by metropolitan municipality (UBPL) (2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

	Poverty Incidence (P_0)			
	2009	2011	2015	2023
All metros	**49,8**	**44,8**	**45,5**	**41,1**
City of Cape Town	45,7	37,1	37,3	35,7
Buffalo City	*	*	50,3	55,2
Nelson Mandela Bay	52,9	51,0	45,8	45,9
eThekwini	54,2	54,7	54,2	50,5
Mangaung	*	57,6	47,7	47,3
City of Johannesburg	52,0	47,0	44,1	40,1
Ekurhuleni	50,8	41,6	48,8	39,1
City of Tshwane	43,2	37,8	42,5	36,3
	Poverty Gap (P_1)			
	2009	2011	2015	2023
All metros	**24,3**	**20,6**	**20,8**	**17,9**
City of Cape Town	22,0	15,5	16,4	14,0
Buffalo City	*	*	24,9	26,1
Nelson Mandela Bay	26,3	26,8	23,0	20,2
eThekwini	26,2	27,9	26,7	24,4
Mangaung	*	28,1	21,8	20,5
City of Johannesburg	24,9	21,0	19,6	17,1
Ekurhuleni	24,9	18,0	21,2	16,0
City of Tshwane	22,0	16,7	19,1	16,6
	Severity of Poverty (P_2)			
	2009	2011	2015	2023
All metros	**14,6**	**12,0**	**12,0**	**10,0**
City of Cape Town	13,2	8,3	9,2	7,3
Buffalo City	*	*	15,3	15,1
Nelson Mandela Bay	15,9	17,3	14,0	11,2
eThekwini	16,1	17,4	16,6	14,6
Mangaung	*	16,7	12,5	11,3
City of Johannesburg	14,8	12,3	10,9	9,4
Ekurhuleni	15,0	9,9	11,8	8,7
City of Tshwane	13,6	9,6	11,1	9,5

**The estimates for Buffalo City in 2009 and 2011, as well as for Mangaung in 2009 cannot be derived in those years due to geographic boundary changes.*

Annexure G – Household poverty shares by FPL

Annexure G provides tables based on the FPL that correspond to the LBPL-based tables found in Chapter 4 of the report. To simplify identification, the numbering of tables in the annexure corresponds to its complementary table from Chapter 4 (i.e. Table G4.4.2 matches to Table 4.4.2, etc.).

Table G4.2.2: Household poverty shares by sex of the household head (FPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

Sex	Poverty shares				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**
Male	43,7	44,2	42,3	39,5	41,2
Female	56,1	55,8	57,7	60,5	58,8

Table G4.3.2: Household poverty shares by population group of the household head (FPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

Population group	Poverty shares				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**
Black African	95,3	96,1	96,2	95,8	96,6
Coloured	4,6	3,8	3,7	4,1	3,1
Indian/Asian	0,1	0,0	0,1	0,1	0,2
White	0,0	0,1	0,0	0,0	0,1

Table G4.4.2: Household poverty shares by age of the household head (FPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

Age group	Poverty shares				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**
0-17	0,7	1,0	0,5	0,4	0,5
18-24	3,6	4,4	4,3	4,0	2,5
25-34	13,8	16,7	15,4	15,6	16,3
35-44	20,5	21,5	21,8	20,6	25,7
45-54	21,6	21,2	22,9	22,1	21,5
55-64	18,1	17,3	16,9	18,5	17,9
65+	21,5	17,9	18,2	18,7	15,7

Table G4.5.2: Household poverty shares by educational level of the household head (FPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

Educational level	Poverty shares				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**
None	33,1	26,0	23,1	23,2	7,9
Some primary	32,7	30,7	33,0	27,9	24,1
Primary	9,3	8,7	9,0	10,6	9,0
Some secondary	21,3	29,1	29,0	32,3	42,5
Matric	3,4	4,3	4,7	5,3	15,1
Higher	0,2	1,2	0,8	0,6	1,5

Table G4.6.2: Household poverty shares by province (FPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

Province	Poverty shares				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**
Western Cape	3,9	4,2	2,8	4,5	5,2
Eastern Cape	19,5	17,7	19,0	18,4	12,3
Northern Cape	3,0	2,2	2,0	2,1	2,7
Free State	5,2	5,9	5,4	4,5	4,4
KwaZulu-Natal	26,8	22,8	24,4	24,3	24,1
North West	7,7	7,6	9,2	8,3	12,4
Gauteng	6,3	10,3	9,2	10,6	19,9
Mpumalanga	9,6	9,5	7,2	9,4	7,3
Limpopo	18,0	19,8	20,8	17,8	11,6

Table G4.7.2: Household poverty shares by settlement type (FPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

Settlement type	Poverty shares				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**
Urban	30,7	36,5	36,2	34,9	50,4
Rural	69,3	63,5	63,8	65,1	49,6

Table G4.8.2: Household poverty shares by household size (FPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

Household size	Poverty shares				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**
1 member	1,4	1,1	2,2	1,1	2,6
2 - 3 members	13,0	18,0	17,3	17,9	15,7
4 - 5 members	30,6	32,6	32,4	30,8	31,3
6 - 9 members	41,6	38,8	39,8	40,3	37,6
10+ members	13,4	9,5	8,3	10,0	12,7

Table G4.9.2: Household poverty shares by metropolitan municipality (FPL) (2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

Metropolitan municipality	Poverty shares			
	2009	2011	2015	2023
All metros	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**
City of Cape Town	16,5	7,3	12,1	9,8
Buffalo City	*	*	5,1	5,4
Nelson Mandela Bay	5,4	10,5	5,6	5,0
eThekwini	21,2	30,8	28,6	24,6
Mangaung	*	7,2	3,5	3,4
City of Johannesburg	24,3	25,2	19,7	23,8
Ekurhuleni	17,0	8,9	13,0	13,0
City of Tshwane	15,7	10,1	12,4	14,9

**The estimates for Buffalo City in 2009 and 2011, as well as for Mangaung in 2009 cannot be derived in those years due to geographic boundary changes.*

Annexure H – Household poverty shares by UBPL

Annexure H provides tables based on the UBPL that correspond to the LBPL-based tables found in Chapter 4 of the report. To simplify identification, the numbering of tables in the annexure corresponds to its complementary table from Chapter 4 (i.e. Table H4.4.2 matches to Table 4.4.2, etc.).

Table H4.2.2: Household poverty shares by sex of the household head (UBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

Sex	Poverty shares				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**
Male	54,7	53,5	51,6	51,2	48,8
Female	45,3	46,5	48,4	48,8	51,2

Table H4.3.2: Household poverty shares by population group of the household head (UBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

Population group	Poverty shares				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**
Black African	90,4	91,3	92,0	92,4	93,1
Coloured	7,8	7,3	6,8	6,5	5,7
Indian/Asian	1,1	0,8	0,7	0,7	0,7
White	0,6	0,6	0,5	0,4	0,5

Table H4.4.2: Household poverty shares by age of the household head (UBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

Age group	Poverty shares				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**
0-17	0,8	0,9	0,5	0,4	0,3
18-24	4,9	6,1	5,9	5,9	4,2
25-34	20,5	21,8	21,4	22,0	18,4
35-44	21,2	22,3	22,1	21,6	25,7
45-54	20,0	20,4	20,7	20,4	20,5
55-64	15,5	14,6	15,0	15,4	15,8
65+	16,9	13,8	14,4	14,3	15,1

Table H4.5.2: Household poverty shares by educational level of the household head (UBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

Educational level	Poverty shares				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**
None	19,6	16,5	14,3	12,6	5,3
Some primary	25,9	23,7	25,0	20,1	17,3
Primary	9,6	8,3	8,5	8,1	6,8
Some secondary	33,2	38,1	38,3	41,3	43,4
Matric	9,9	9,7	10,8	14,9	22,2
Higher	1,8	3,8	2,7	3,0	5,0

Table H4.6.2: Household poverty shares by province (UBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

Province	Poverty shares				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**
Western Cape	8,2	8,5	8,1	8,3	8,5
Eastern Cape	16,0	14,0	14,6	13,5	11,3
Northern Cape	2,6	2,4	1,9	2,2	2,1
Free State	7,1	6,5	6,3	5,8	5,4
KwaZulu-Natal	19,4	18,9	19,4	19,7	19,1
North West	7,5	8,1	8,7	8,6	9,2
Gauteng	18,4	21,0	20,2	22,0	24,1
Mpumalanga	8,2	8,5	7,6	8,4	9,0
Limpopo	12,7	12,2	13,2	11,6	11,3

Table H4.7.2: Household poverty shares by settlement type (UBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

Settlement type	Poverty shares				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**
Urban	53,6	56,9	56,2	57,2	59,3
Rural	46,4	43,1	43,8	42,8	40,7

Table H4.8.2: Household poverty shares by household size (UBPL) (2006, 2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

Household size	Poverty shares				
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2023
South Africa	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**
1 member	12,0	12,3	12,8	13,0	10,7
2 - 3 members	29,3	33,5	32,2	32,9	32,3
4 - 5 members	30,0	28,7	29,9	29,1	32,0
6 - 9 members	23,6	21,6	22,1	21,4	21,2
10+ members	5,0	3,9	3,0	3,6	3,8

Table H4.9.2: Household poverty shares by metropolitan municipality (UBPL) (2009, 2011, 2015 and 2023)

Metropolitan municipality	Poverty shares			
	2009	2011	2015	2023
All metros	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**
City of Cape Town	17,2	14,9	14,2	14,7
Buffalo City	*	*	3,6	4,2
Nelson Mandela Bay	6,1	5,5	4,5	5,0
eThekwini	19,2	19,4	19,0	17,6
Mangaung	*	5,9	3,6	3,9
City of Johannesburg	25,9	25,5	23,0	25,5
Ekurhuleni	19,2	16,5	18,8	15,7
City of Tshwane	12,3	12,3	13,2	13,3

**The estimates for Buffalo City in 2009 and 2011, as well as for Mangaung in 2009 cannot be derived in those years due to geographic boundary changes.*

References

Bloom, D. E. & Williams, J. G. 1998. *Demographic Transitions and Economic Miracles in Emerging Asia*. World Bank Economic Review, 12: 419-456

Budlender, J., Leibbrandt, M. & Woolard, I. 2015. *South African poverty lines: A review and two new money metric thresholds*. Southern Africa Labour and Development Research Unit Working Paper Number 151. Cape Town: SALDRU, University of Cape Town.

Deaton, A. & Zaidi, S. 2002. *Guidelines for constructing consumption aggregates for welfare analysis*. LSMS Working Paper 135. Washington DC: World Bank.

National Planning Commission (NPC) 2012. *National Development Plan (NDP): Vision for 2030.* Pretoria: Presidency.

Ravallion, M. 1998. *Poverty lines in theory and in practice*. Washington DC: World Bank.

South Africa (Republic of) 1994. *The Reconstruction and Development Programme (RDP): A policy framework*. Johannesburg: African National Congress (ANC).

South Africa (Republic of) 2010. *Diagnostic Overview.* Pretoria: National Planning Commission (NPC).

Statistics South Africa (Stats SA) 2012. *Measuring poverty in South Africa: Methodological report on the development of the poverty lines for statistical reporting.* Technical Report D0300. Pretoria: Stats SA.

Statistics South Africa (Stats SA) 2014. *Poverty trends in South Africa: An examination of absolute poverty between 2006 and 2011.* Report 03-10-06. Pretoria: Stats SA.

Statistics South Africa (Stats SA) 2014. *The South African MPI: Creating a multidimensional poverty index using census data.* Report 03-10-08. Pretoria: Stats SA.

Statistics South Africa (Stats SA) 2015. *Methodological report on rebasing of national poverty lines and development on pilot provincial poverty lines.* Report 03-10-11. Pretoria: Stats SA.

Statistics South Africa (Stats SA) 2017. *Poverty trends in South Africa: An examination of absolute poverty between 2006 and 2015.* Report 03-10-06. Pretoria: Stats SA.

Statistics South Africa (Stats SA) 2024a. *National poverty lines 2024.* Statistical Release P0310.1. 29 August 2024. Pretoria: Stats SA.

Statistics South Africa (Stats SA) 2024b. *Recorded live births 2023.* Statistical Release P0305. 12 September 2024. Pretoria: Stats SA.

Statistics South Africa (Stats SA) 2024c. *World Population Day in the context of 30 years of democracy from a statistical perspective.* Report 03-00-22. Pretoria: Stats SA.

Statistics South Africa (Stats SA) 2025a. *Income and expenditure of households 2022/2023.* Statistical Release P0100. 28 January 2025. Pretoria: Stats SA.

Statistics South Africa (Stats SA) 2025b. *Mid-year population estimates 2025*. Statistical Release P0302. 28 July 2025. Pretoria: Stats SA.

Statistics South Africa (Stats SA) 2025c. *Gross domestic product: Second quarter 2025*. Statistical Release P0441. 9 September 2025. Pretoria: Stats SA.

Statistics South Africa (Stats SA) 2025d. *Consumer Price Index: August 2025*. Statistical Release P0141. 17 September 2025. Pretoria: Stats SA.

Statistics South Africa (Stats SA) 2025e. *Quarterly Labour Force Survey: Quarter 3: 2025*. Statistical Release P0211. 11 November 2025. Pretoria: Stats SA.

Statistics South Africa (Stats SA) 2025f. *Retail trade sales: September 2025*. Statistical Release P6242.1. 19 November 2025. Pretoria: Stats SA.

Statistics South Africa (Stats SA) 2025g. *Methodological report on the rebasing of the national poverty lines using the Income & Expenditure Survey 2022/23*. Report 03-10-30. Pretoria: Stats SA.

Report No. 03-10-06

ISBN: 978-1-83491-416-9